

Government Gazette Staatskoerant

Vol. 437

Pretoria, 21 November 2001

No. 22846



AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure

CONTENTS • INHOUD

No.

Page Gazette No. No.

GOVERNMENT NOTICES

South African Qualifications Authority

Government Notices

1202	Public notice by NSB 05: Education, Training and Development, to register an SGB for Practitioners Specialising in Barriers to Learning and Development	3	22846
1203	National Standards Bodies Regulations: Financial Services	6	22846
1204	do.: Human Resource Management and Practices	55	22846
1205	National Certificate in Human Resources Management and Practices Support NQF 4: Business, Commerce and Management Studies—NSB 03	66	22846
1206	National Standards Bodies Regulations: Project Management	76	22846
1207	do.: Marketing	87	22846
1208	National Diploma in Marketing Research NQF: Level 5: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	98	22846
1209	National First Degree in Marketing Research NQF: Level 6: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	108	22846
1210	National Second Degree in Marketing Research NQF: Level 7: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	118	22846
1211	National Certificate in Marketing Management NQF: Level 4: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	127	22846
1212	National Diploma in Marketing Management NQF: Level 5: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	137	22846
1213	National First Degree in Marketing Management NQF: Level 6: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	147	22846
1214	National Second Degree in Marketing Management NQF: Level 7: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	157	22846
1215	National Certificate in Marketing Communications NQF: Level 4: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	167	22846
1216	National Diploma in Marketing Communications NQF: Level 5: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	178	22846
1217	National First Degree in Marketing Communications NQF: Level 6: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	188	22846
1218	National Second Degree in Marketing Communications NQF: Level 7: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	198	22846
1219	National Certificate in Customer Management NQF: Level 4: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	207	22846
1220	National Diploma in Customer Management NQF: Level 5: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	217	22846
1221	National First Degree in Customer Management NQF: Level 6: Business, Commerce and Management Studies	227	22846
1222	National Second Degree in Customer Management NQF: Level 7, Business, Commerce and Management Studies	237	22846

GOVERNMENT NOTICES

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY

No. 1202

21 November 2001

PUBLIC NOTICE BY NSB 05, EDUCATION, TRAINING AND DEVELOPMENT, TO REGISTER AN SGB FOR PRACTITIONERS SPECIALISING IN BARRIERS TO LEARNING AND DEVELOPMENT

NSB 05 hereby registers an SGB for Practitioners Specialising in Barriers to Learning

BRIEF OF THE SGB

- Analyse the concepts of 'barriers to learning and development' and investigate
 the sites of learning, types of practitioners, and types of educational practice
 involved in addressing the needs of learners with barriers to learning and
 development.
- 2. Based on the analysis conducted in (1), design learning pathways and identify standards and qualifications for Barriers to Learning and Development for all practitioners in field 05. [Regulation 24 (1)(e)]
- Analyse existing standards in Field 05 to identify the extent to which they assist
 practitioners in the various sub-fields to teach learners with barriers to learning
 and development in mainstream educational contexts.
- Monitor the continued generation of standards for practitioners across the subfields in Field 05, and, if necessary, generate additional barriers to learning and development standards for inclusion in the practitioner qualifications prepared by other SGBs.
- 5. Generate at least the following qualifications
 - Certificate at level 4 in the education of learners with barriers to learning and development.
 - Diploma at level 5 in the education of learners with barriers to learning and development, with one of the following specialisations - deaf, visual disability, hearing and visual disability, physical disability, intellectual disability, learning difficulties, emotional difficulties.
 - Degree at level 6 in the education of learners with barriers to learning and development, with one of the following specialisations - deaf, visual disability, hearing and visual disability, physical disability, intellectual disability, learning difficulties, emotional difficulties.
 - Certificate at level 6 in mentoring non-specialist educators so that they
 can assist learners with barriers to learning and development. [Regulation
 24 (1)(a)]
- Recommend the qualifications and standards generated under 5 above to the NSB. [Regulation 24 (1)(c)]
- Recommend criteria for the registration of assessors and moderators or moderating bodies. [Regulation 24 (1)(d)]
- 8. Review these qualifications and standards and effect the necessary changes. [Regulation 24 (1)(b)]
- Perform such other tasks as may from time to time be assigned by the NSB. [Regulation 24 (1)(e)]

COMPOSITION OF THE SGB

NOMINEE	WORKPLACE	NOMINATING BODY	QUALIFICATION/ EXPERIENCE
Beer, C	Retired	SA Federation for Mental Health	Diploma in Education, Chairperson of the Division for Mental Handicap of SAFMH
Birkett, P	Early Learning Resource Unit	Early Learning Resource Unit	HDE, Facilitator of training of trainers
Bressan, A	Cato Manor Technical College	Cato Manor Technical College	B A,HDE- Head Business Studies Division and Coordinator of Special Needs Education
Condy, J	Cape Technikon	Committee of Technikon Principals	M Sc, Lecturer in Special Educational Needs
Foggit,G	Fulton School for the Deaf	Fulton School for the Deaf	B A, Teacher
Higgerty, M	The SA Guide- dogs Association for the Blind	The SA Guide- dogs Association for the Blind	B SocSc, Principal of the Orientation and Mobility School
Khumalo, M	SA Federal Council on Disability	SA Federal Council on Disability	B A(Hons), Coordinator of Education, Arts and Culture, Sport and Recreation in SAFCD
Koudstaal, C	Unica School for the cerebrally disabled	Autism SA	B A(Speech Therapy), Principal at Unica school for the cerebrally disabled
Kruger, D	Educational Psychologist (private practice)	UNISA	D Ed, Educational psychologist and Senior Lecturer in Special Needs Education at UNISA
Landsberg, E	UNISA	UNISA	M Ed, Senior Lecturer in Special Needs Education
Levin	Dept of Education	Dept of Education	B Ed (Hons), Project Manager of DANIDA Inclusive education project

Mahlangu, E	Dept of Education	Dept of Education	B Admin. UED, Deputy Chief Education Specialist in the ELSEN Directorate
Moodley, S	Research and Development Consultant	Disabled People of South Africa	M Ed, Research and Development Consultant
Mudau, P	Sekhukhune College of Education	Sekhukhune College of Education	B Ed, Lecturer in Remedial Education
Muller, P	Down Syndrome SA	Down Syndrome SA	Chairperson Down Syndrome Association Western Cape
Palime, B	Office on the Status of Disabled Persons	Office on the Status of Disabled Persons	BA Hons, Deputy Director-Liaison Services
Pooe, D	Dept of Social Development	Dept of Social Development	BA Hons, Deputy Director
Reddy,M	New Beginnings Early Childhood Development Project	SA Congress of Early Childhood Development	Diploma (Pre School Teaching, Curriculum Developer
Saunders, P	Western Cape Dept of Education	National Council for Persons with Physical Disability in SA	M Ed, Senior Deputy Chief Education Specialist
Schoeman G.H.	SA National Council for the Blind	SA National Council for the Blind	D Ed, Education Consultant
Storbeck, C	Wits University	DEAFSA	PhD, Coordinator of Deaf Education
Tyawa, B	Wits University	Wits University	M Ed, Lecturer in the Division of Specialised Education

No. 1203

21 November 2001



SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY (SAQA)

In accordance with regulation 24(c) of the National Standards Bodies Regulations of 28 March 1998, the Standards Generating Body (SGB) for

Financial Services

Registered by NSB 03, Business, Commerce and Management Studies, publishes the following unit standards for public comment.

This notice contains the titles, fields, sub-fields, NQF levels, credits, and purposes of the qualifications, and the titles and specific outcomes of the unit standards upon which qualifications are based. The full qualifications and unit standards can be accessed via the SAQA web-site at www.saqa.co.za. Copies may also be obtained from the Directorate of Standards Setting and Development at the SAQA offices, 659 Pienaar street, Brooklyn, Pretoria.

Comment on the unit standards should reach SAQA at the address **below and no later than**19 December 2001. All correspondence should be marked Standards Setting – SGB for
Financial Services and addressed to

The Director: Standard Setting and Development SAQA

Attention: Mr. D Mphuthing
Postnet Suite 248
Private Bag X06
Waterkloof
0145
or faxed to 012 – 482 0907

RESECUTIVE OFFICER

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



Unit Standards for National Certificates in Banking Levels 2-5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Financial Services

The International Unit Standards listed below are intended for learners who wish to attain one or more of that registered National Certificates in Banking from levels two to five (2-5). They may be selected as either core or elective unit standards for purposes of these qualifications dependent on the purpose of the particular qualification chosen.

 Process reimbursement authorisation 	Manage foreign currency accounts	Authorise and release reimbursement payments
Process forward exchange contracts	5. Process export letters of credit	Authorise and release foreign finance loans
 Process import letters of credit 	Authorise and release an import letter of credit / amendment	Authorise and release an export letter of credit
 Authorise and release forward exchange contracts 	11. Process foreign finance loans	12. Consult to clients on trade related issues

Title: Process reimbursement authorisation

Level:

3

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

4

Issue Date:

April 2001

Review Date:

April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to receive a reimbursement authorisation, process the reimbursement claim and

attend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standard or

processing import letters of credit.

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to reimbursement authorisation.

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the transaction is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: the nature of the underlying transaction, how the transaction works, the process for payment, the parties to the transactions and their rights and obligations. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting reimbursement authorisation is identified and explained in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Exchange Control regulations, Bills of Exchange Act. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The relevant international regulations and accepted practice governing reimbursement authorisation are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: URR 525, UCP500, ICC opinions, international payment systems, SWIFT messages and format. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The risks and risk management processes associated with the reimbursement authorisation are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: risks from the client's and the banks perspective, country risk, acceptable

practice, payment terms, certain technical risks, exchange rate risk, credit risk, risk associated with non-compliance with the terms and conditions of the letter of credit .. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.5 The specific banks electronic process for processing reimbursement authorisations is understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: access to the system, opening a record, printing records/ reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Receive reimbursement authorisation

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The reimbursement authorisation is received and recorded according to standard procedures.
- 2.2 The reimbursement authorisation is scrutinised for completeness and compliance with URR525.
- Entries for charges, liabilities and exposure are prepared as appropriate and according to 2.3 standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Process the reimbursement claim

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The reimbursement claim is received according to standard procedures.
- 3.2 The claim is scrutinised against the reimbursement authority and URR525.
- 3.3 The claim is processed in accordance with reimbursement authority instructions and in terms of standard procedures.
- 3.4 Entries are prepared as required by the bank.
- 3.5 Discrepant claims are handled according to standard procedures and URR525.
- 3.6 Advice to all parties is prepared according to standard procedures and in terms of URR525.

Specific Outcome No.

Attend to queries

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 4.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 4.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 4.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 4.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process a reimbursement claim.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Working knowledge of types of letter of credit.

Working knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of URR525.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

General understanding of the specific risks, and relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Title: Manage Foreign Currency Accounts

Level:

4

Version:

Language: E

Credits:

20

Issue Date: Review Date:

April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to explain rules and regulations relating to foreign currency accounts, set up the foreign currency account, process transactions over the account, close the account and attend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

Persons attempting this unit standard will be required to have an understanding of the basic Exchange Control rulings and exchange rate mechanisms, as well as a knowledge of foreign exchange currencies and basic International trade concepts. They should be familiar with basic currency conversions.

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to foreign currency accounts.

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the account is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: the nature of the underlying transactions, how the account works, the process for statements and balance, terms and conditions, pricing, features and benefits. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting foreign currency accounts is identified and explained in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Exchange Control regulations. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The risks and risk management processes associated with the foreign currency account are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: risks from the client's and the banks perspective, country risk, acceptable practice, trade insurance, technical risks, exchange rate risk, credit risk. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The specific banks electronic process for processing foreign currency accounts and transactions over accounts is understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: access to the system, opening a record, printing records/reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Set up the foreign currency account

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The request for a foreign currency account is received and checked for completeness and compliance with the bank's policy.
- 2.2 The request for a foreign currency account is checked for compliance with exchange control regulations.
- 3.3 The client is advised for the pricing and charges associated with the account and the transactions processed on the account.
- 2.4 The client is advised of the exchange control regulations governing the use of the account in a manner the client should understand.
- 2.5 The account is opened in line with the banks policy and procedures and exchange control regulations.
- 2.6 Credit authorisation is obtained where necessary according to the bank's policy.
- 2.7 Where necessary a credit limit is loaded for the account according to standard procedures and credit authorisation.
- 2.8 Appropriate charges associated with opening of the account are recovered according to the bank's policy and procedures.
- 2.9 The client is advised when the account becomes operational and is informed of the procedures for use of the account.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Process transactions over the account.

Range: Import payments, export proceeds, inward or outward freight costs.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 Foreign amounts received are checked for compliance with exchange control regulations and correctly deposited into the account in terms of exchange control regulations and the banks policy and procedure.
- 3.2 Funds are transferred into Rand accounts in terms of client instructions, bank procedure and exchange control regulations.

- 3.3 Interest payable or accrued monthly is processed in terms of client instructions, bank procedure and exchange control regulations.
- 3.4 Charges associated with the transactions are calculated and processed in line with banking procedure.
- 3.5 The client is provided with information on the account on request, statements on the account are provided in line with bank policy.
- 3.6 Foreign funds paid from the account and deposited into the account are correctly applied to corresponding transactions in the manner required by the bank and are processed in line with exchange control regulations.
- 3.7 Import payments are made in terms of the client's instructions, review of original import documents and in line with exchange control requirements.
- 3.8 The account balance is monitored in line with the credit limit on the account.
- 3.9 The term for which foreign funds are held in the account is monitored in line with exchange control requirements.
- 3.10 The account is monitored to ensure it does not become dormant in line with exchange control regulations.
- 3.11 The client is notified of any activity, transaction, dormancy that does not comply with exchange control regulations, and corrective action is taken in terms of the client's instruction.
- 3.12 The client is notified of foreign funds held in the account that are close to the exchange control expiry.
- 3.13 Disposal instructions for transfer of foreign funds into Rand accounts are obtained for foreign funds held longer than allowed by exchange control regulations.

Specific Outcome No. 4

Close the account.

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 The instruction to close the account is received from the client and checked in line with authorised signatures held according to banking policy and procedure.
- 4.2 Disposal or repayment instructions for funds and interest in the account are obtain in writing from the client as required by the bank.
- 4.3 The account is closed according to standard banking procedures.
- 4.4 The disposal or repayment instructions are processed according to standard banking procedures.
- 4.5 Details of disposal or repayment are checked for accuracy, compliance with exchange control and the client's instructions.

4.6 Revenue associated with the closing of the account is recovered according to the bank's policy and procedures.

Specific Outcome No.5

Attend to queries.

Assessment Criteria

- 5.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 5.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.

CARL TRANSPORT FOR THE SERVICE STREET

to the first term of the death of the state of the

- 5.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 5.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 5.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.1 The learner is able to monitor foreign amount received for compliance with exchange control regulations.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate information effectively to the client.
- 1.6 The learner is able to use technology effectively.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking policy and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Thorough knowledge of appropriate SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Thorough knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and

complete the task.

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

General knowledge of the requirements of the Banks Act.

Working knowledge of the Code of Banking Practice.

Version: 1

Title: Authorise and release reimbursement payments

Level:

4

Language: E

Credits:

16

Issue Date: Review Date: April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to authorise acceptance of reimbursement authorisation, authorise and release the

reimbursement claim andattend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard would be completed subsequent to proven competence in the unit standard for processing reimbursement authorisation (IB007).

Specific Outcome No. 1

Authorise and release reimbursement authorisation

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The rules and regulations relating to reimbursement authorisation is understood and explained according to the banks policy and procedure.

Range: the rules and regulations governing the transaction,, local and international legal requirements, exchange control and internal company policy and control procedures. Evidence of competence across the full range is required

- 1.2 The reimbursement authorisation is checked for completeness and compliance with URR525.
- 1.3 Processing errors are corrected in line with company policy and procedure.

Range: minor amendments to details on the system, complete reversal of transactions, reversal of part of a transaction, and reprocessing of a full transaction or part of a transaction. Evidence of competence across the entire range is required.

1.4 Entries for charges, liabilities and exposure are checked and released according to standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Authorise and release the reimbursement claim

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The reimbursement claim is checked against the reimbursement authority and URR525.
- 2.2 The processing of the claim is checked for compliance with reimbursement authority instructions and according to standard procedures.
- 2.3 Entries are checked and released according to standard procedures.
- 2.4 Discrepant claims are checked and handled according to standard procedures.
- 2.5 Advice to all parties is released as required by the bank.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Attend to queries

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.2 Oueries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 3.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 3.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETOA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- 3 Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process reimbursement claim.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Working knowledge of types of letter of credit.

Working knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of URR525.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

General understanding of the specific risks, and relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Title: Process forward exchange contracts

Range: Foreign Exchange Contracts (FEC's), futures and derivatives. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

Level:

3

Version: 1

Language: E AND THE THE PARTY OF THE

the contract of Allina the ball and in property with

Credits:

Issue Date: April 2001

Review Date:

April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to explain rules and regulations relating to forward exchange contracts establish the contract, source the foreign currency and then manage and close the contract.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to proven competence in the unit standards for purchasing and selling foreign instruments and processing inward and outward foreign documentary

collections.

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to forward exchange contracts

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the product is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: types of forward exchange contracts, the nature of the underlying transaction, how the product works, the process for payment, the parties to the transactions, rights and obligations, terms and conditions, pricing, features and benefits. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting forward exchange contracts is identified and explained in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Exchange Control regulations, Bills of Exchange Act. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The relevant international regulations and accepted practice governing forward exchange contracts are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

> Range: international payment systems, SWIFT messages and format. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The risks and risk management processes associated with the forward exchange contracts are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: risks from the client's and the banks perspective, country risk, acceptable practice, payment terms, technical risks, exchange rate risk, credit risk, basic management practices associated with forward exchange contracts. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.5 The specific banks electronic process for processing forward exchange contracts is understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: access to the system, opening a record, printing records/reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Establish the contract

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 Details of the currency requirements are obtained from the client and recorded in the manner required by the bank.
 - Range: currency, amount, contract options and time period. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 2.2 Compliance with exchange control regulations and rulings is established or the necessary approval for the facility is obtained if required, according to standard policy and procedures.
- 2.3 Where necessary, credit authority is obtained and recorded according to standard policy and procedures.
- 2.4 A fixed rate for the currency/pair is determined in liaison with treasury and in the manner required by the bank.
- 2.5 The rate and the terms and condition of the contract are conveyed to the client for acceptance.
 - Range: details of the contract, pricing and associated charges, expiry date of contract, contract options, cancellation implications. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 2.6 The contract for the sale or purchase of currency is completed and processed according to standard procedures.
 - Range: client authorisation, verification of signatures, complete, accurate record of contract established. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 2.7 The fee is confirmed to the client according to standard procedures.
- 2.8 Charges are recovered according to standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Process drawings under the contract

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 Details of the drawings are obtained from the client and recorded in the manner required by the bank.
 - Range: currency, amount, contract options and time period. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 3.2 Where necessary, settlement instructions are obtained from the client in line with standard procedures.
- 3.3 Depending on the nature of the underlying transaction, the disposal of the currency/pair is arranged in line with standard procedures.
 - Range: letters of credit, foreign bills for collection, foreign finance loans. Evidence across the full range is required
- 3.4 Each drawing of currency under the contract is recorded according to standard procedures in terms of the contract and in line with exchange control requirements.
- 3.5 Early drawings/rollovers/cancellations are processed according to standard procedures.
- 3.6 Any additional charges are recovered according to standard procedures.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
 - Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
 - Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process a forward exchange contract.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.6 The learner is able to use technology to process the drawing documents and payments.

1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between the forward exchange contract and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking policy and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of appropriate SWIFT message formats.

Working knowledge of exchange rates and treasury.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

area for a factor of the second se

The state of the s

the state of the s

The remaining the sense of the particle contest to be a contest of the sense of the

partition of the figure and the figure of the contract of the figure.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and complete the task.

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Working understanding of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

Construction of the second of the second

the expression of the control of the

Title: Authorise and release an export letter of credit.

Range: unconfirmed irrevocable letter of credit, confirmed irrevocable letter of credit, sight credit, acceptance credit, deferred payment credit, red clause credit, revolving credit, negotiation credit, standby credit.

Level:

5

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

16

Issue Date:

April 2001

Review Date:

April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to check the

advisement process, authorise and release drawing documents and attend

to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standards for processing import and export letters of credit, and reimbursement authorisation. It is recommended that persons attempting this unit standard have had some experience in processing letters of credit prior to

being assessed on this unit standard.

Specific Outcome No. 1

Check the advising process.

Assessment Criteria

- 1.1 The processing of the letter of credit is assessed for compliance with standard procedures and policies as required by the bank.
- 1.2 The processing accuracy of existing input is checked in line with standard procedures.
- 1.3 Compliance with internationally accepted practice is evaluated according to standard procedures.

Range: UCP 500 and ICC Opinions.

- 1.4 The identification of possible risk implications based on the terms and conditions of the credit is checked for appropriate management of the risk as required by the bank.
- 1.5 The notification to the beneficiary of identified risks and restrictions is checked for accuracy and completeness as required by the bank's policy.
- 1.6 Confirmation arrangements are checked in the manner required by the bank.
- 1.7 The recovery of revenue associated with the transaction is checked for accuracy and

- compliance with the bank's policy and procedures.
- 1.8 The decision is taken that the procedural requirements of the letter of credit advisement process have been met as required by the bank.
- 1.9 Entries for charges, liabilities and exposure are checked and authorised and released according to standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Authorise and release drawing documents

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 Documents are checked for compliance with the letter of credit and according to UCP 500 and ICC opinions.
- 2.2 Identified discrepancies are checked and handled as required by UCP 500 and the banks standard procedures, and the client/ bank is advised accordingly.
- 2.3 The reimbursement process is checked for accuracy and compliance with the terms of the letter of credit as required by the bank.
- 2.4 The settlement process is checked as required by the bank.
- 2.5 The required credit authorisation for the release of payment before reimbursement is obtained or referred for higher authorisation according to the bank's policies and procedures.
- 2.6 Drawing documents are authorised and released or referred for further authorisation in line with the bank's policies and procedures.

Range: Sight, USANCE and deferred payment drawings.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Attend to queries.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 3.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 3.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- 2 Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process letter of credit/amendment.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between letter of credit/amendment and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Thorough understanding of types of letters of credit.

Thorough knowledge of the bank's business allocation policy.

Thorough knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of the Bills of Exchange Act.

Thorough knowledge of the INCO terms.

Thorough knowledge of URR 525.

Thorough knowledge of UCP 500.

Thorough knowledge and understanding of ICC Opinions.

Thorough knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of applicable exchange controls.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Thorough knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Thorough knowldege of internal controls.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

Thorough understanding of the specific risks, and relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Version: 1

Title: Process Foreign Finance Loans

Range: Import, export and working capital loans

Level:

Language: E

Credits:

18

Issue Date: **Review Date:** April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to explain rules and regulations related to foreign finance loans, obtain authority for the establishment of a foreign finance facility, arrange the utilisation of the facility, source the foreign funds, manage the facility and arrange the repayment and rollover of the loan.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to proven competence in the unit standards for purchasing and selling foreign instruments and processing inward and outward foreign documentary collections.

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to foreign finance loans.

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the product is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: types of foreign finance loans, the nature of the underlying transaction, how the product works, the process for payment, the parties to the transactions and their rights and obligations, terms and conditions, pricing, features and benefits. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting foreign finance loans is identified and explained in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Exchange Control regulations, Bills of Exchange Act. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The relevant international regulations and accepted practice governing foreign finance loans are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: exchange rates, credit options, international payment systems, SWIFT

messages and format. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The risks and risk management processes associated with the foreign finance loans are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: risks from the client's and the banks perspective, country risk, acceptable practice, insurance, payment terms, certain technical risks, exchange rate risk, credit risk, risk associated with non-compliance with the terms and conditions of the loan, basic risk management practices associated with foreign finance loans. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.5 The specific banks electronic process for processing foreign finance loans is understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: access to the system, opening a record, printing records/ reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No.2

Arrange the utilisation of the foreign finance facility

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 Details of the requirements for a foreign finance facility are submitted to the credit authority in the manner required by the bank.
- 2.2 The client's request/instruction is checked against the authorised credit limits and the terms of the credit facility.
- 2.3 Where necessary the request/instruction is referred for higher authorisation according to the bank's credit policy and procedure.
- 2.4 The authorised facility and the associated terms are recorded in the manner required by the bank.
- 2.5 Changes to the loan are recorded in the manner required by the bank and in line with exchange control regulations.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Source the foreign funds.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The details of the loan are checked for accuracy in terms of the client's instructions, conformity to the loan terms and conditions and according to standard procedures.
- 3.2 The foreign finance loan is raised through liaison with the treasury according to standard procedures.

had part for the original to the first first for the second section in the second section is the second section of the second section in the second section is the second section of the second section in the second section is the second section of the second section in the second section is the second section of the second section in the second section is the second section of the second section in the second section is the second section of the section of the second section is the second section of the section o

3.3 The details of the deal are confirmed according to standard procedures.

Range: amount, currency, exchange rate, interest rate/margin, interest amount, settlement arrangements, date and maturity date of the loan. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

- 3.4 The funds are disposed of in terms of the client's request/instructions and according to standard procedures.
- 3.5 The customer is advised of the conclusion of the transaction according to standard procedures.
- 3.6 The draw down of funds is recorded according to standard credit and internal accounting procedures and in line with exchange control requirements.

Specific Outcome No. 4

Process loan transactions

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 Access to foreign finance funds/loan/facility is handled in line with standard credit and internal accounting procedures and according to exchange control requirements.
- 4.2 Foreign funds paid and received in relation to the loan are correctly applied to loan/facility/corresponding transactions in the manner required by the bank and in line with exchange control regulations.
- 4.3 Information relating to the loan is provided to the client, credit authority, and/or other appropriate parties in line with standard procedures.

Range: statements, details of entries passed, balances, interest and charges. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

Specific Outcome No. 5

Arrange repayment of the foreign finance loan

Range: Foreign finance loans and refinanced/rollover transaction

Assessment Criteria

- Prior to the due date, the client is notified of the maturity date of the loan and instructions regarding repayment are obtained in the manner required by the bank.
- 5.2 Timely repayment is arranged using the appropriate exchange rate mechanism, in line with the client's instructions and standard procedures.

Range: drawing currency under an FEC (forward exchange contract); recovery of funds from a foreign currency account; purchase of forex from treasury; recovery of Rand equivalent from a domestic account. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

- 5.3 Repayment of the loan is effected for the value date in terms of the facility, exchange control requirements and on the basis of the client's instructions.
- 5.4 Details of the repayment are recorded against the client's credit facility in line with standard procedures.
- 5.5 Revenue related to the loan is recovered and appropriately allocated in line with standard policy and procedure.

Specific Outcome No. 6

Arrange rollover of the loan

Assessment Criteria

- 6.1 Credit approval for refinancing/rollover is obtained in the manner required by the bank.
- 6.2 The refinancing request is checked for compliance with Exchange Control regulations or referred for approval as required by the bank.
- 6.3 Details of the refinancing/rollover requirements are confirmed with the client and recorded in the manner required by the bank.
 - Range: amount, currency, exchange rate, interest rate/margin, interest amount, settlement arrangements, date and expiry date of the loan. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 6.4 The refinancing/rollover of the loan is arranged through liaison with treasury in the manner required by the bank.
- Appropriate additional charges and commissions associated with the rollover are recovered in line with the bank's policy and procedures.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETOA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1.Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process a foreign finance loan.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.6 The learner is able to use technology to process the drawing documents and payments.
- 1.7The learner is able to understand the relationship between the foreign finance loan and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking police and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of appropriate SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Thorough knowledge of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and complete the task

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

The state of the s

and the state of the

General understanding of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

General knowledge of the requirements of the Banks Act.

Working knowledge of the Code of Banking Practice.

The State of the Control of the Cont

Title: Process import letters of credit.

Range: sight credit, acceptance credit, deferred payment credit, negotiation credit.

Level:

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

Issue Date: **Review Date:** April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to explain rules and regulations related to letters of credit/ amendment, receive an application for a letter of credit/amendment, prepare a letter of credit/amendment for issue, process the documents, deal with discrepant documents and process

the payment.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to proven competence in the unit standards for purchasing and selling foreign instruments and processing inward and outward foreign documentary collections. It is recommended that persons attempting this unit standard have had some experience in processing import letters of credit.

Persons attempting this unit standard must demonstrate competence in the given range of the forms of import letters of credit.

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to import letters of credit/amendment.

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the product is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: Including but not limited to types of import letters of credit, the nature of the underlying transaction, how the product works, the process for payment, the parties to the transactions and their rights and obligations, terms and conditions, pricing, features and benefits. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting import letters of credit is identified and explained in relation to import letters of credit in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Including but not limited to Exchange Control regulations, Bills of Exchange Act. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The relevant international regulations and accepted practice governing import letters of credit are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Including but not limited to URR 525, UCP500, INCO terms, ICC opinions, international payment systems, SWIFT messages and format. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The risks and risk management processes associated with the import letter of credit are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Including but not limited to risks from the client's and the banks perspective, insurance, exchange rate risk credit risk, risk associated with non-compliance with the terms and conditions of the letter of credit, basic risk management practices associated with import letters of credit Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.5 The specific banks electronic process for processing import letters of credit is understood and explained.

Range:Including but not limited to access to the system, opening a record, printing records/reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No.2

Receive an application for a letter of credit/amendment.

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The client's application for the letter of credit /amendment is processed according to the bank's policies and procedures.
 - 2.2.1 The application for the letter of credit/amendment is checked for compliance with Exchange Control regulations or referred for approval as required by the bank.
- 2.3 The application for the letter of credit/amendment is scrutinised for completeness, logical consistency, compliance with UCP 500 and as required by the bank.
 - Range: Including but not limited to signature confirmation, proof of insurance, check against copy of pro forma invoice, receipt/holding of required indemnity. Evidence of competence across the full range is required
- 2.4 Credit authority is received from the credit department according to standard procedures.
- 2.5 Charges are levied according to the bank's policy.

2.6 Liability and exposure entries are prepared as required by the bank.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Prepare the letter of credit for issue.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The correspondent bank to be used as the advising, negotiating, reimbursing and/or confirming bank is allocated according to the bank's policy.
- 3.2 The approved/corrected letter of credit is recorded in line with standard procedures.
- 3.3 The application for the letter of credit is forwarded for authorisation according to standard procedures.
- 3.4 Once authorisation has been received, the reimbursement authorities are drafted and captured according to standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 4

Process the drawing documents.

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 The advice of acceptance or payment is handled according to standard procedures.
- The documents from the presenting bank/beneficiary are checked for compliance according to UCP 500 and the bank's policy.
 - Range: Including but not limited to the terms of the letter of credit, advice of negotiation/payment/acceptance.
- 4.3 Accepted/clean documents are handled in line with standard procedures.
- 4.4 Advice of discrepant documents is processed according to standard procedures.
- 4.5 Discrepancies identified in the documents are dealt with in terms of UCP 500 and the bank's policy and procedures.
- 4.6. The client is contacted for authorisation of discrepancies, and acceptance in writing is awaited according to the bank's policy.
- 4.7 Discrepant documents received and not accepted are processed as required by UCP 500, the bank's policies and procedures and in terms of the letter of credit.
- 4.8 Advice to all parties is prepared according to the terms of the letter of credit, UCP 500

and standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 5

Process the payment.

Assessment Criteria

- 5.1 Instructions for the recovery of funds are obtained from the applicant in terms of the letter of credit and according to the bank's procedures.
- 5.2 Preparation for the recovery of funds is arranged timeously in line with the client's instructions and the bank's procedures.

Range: Drawing currency under a forward exchange contract; recovery of funds from the client's foreign currency account; purchase of forex from treasury on the client's behalf; recovery of funds from a Rand account. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

- 5.3 Charges are calculated and entries prepared in the manner required by the bank.
- 5.4 Adjusted liabilities and exposure entries are prepared as required by the bank.
- 5.5 Advice to all parties is prepared according to the terms of the letter of credit, UCP 500 and standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 6

Attend to queries.

Assessment Criteria

- 6.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 6.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 6.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 6.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 6.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.

2 Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA. Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learner is able to evaluate and process letters of credit.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.6 The learner is able to use technology to process the drawing documents and payments.
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between the letter of credit and exchange control regulations.

gravitatikos albania (k. 1911). Kalender

2. Embedded Knowledge

Working understanding of types of letters of credit.

Working knowledge of the bank's business allocation policy.

Working knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of the Bills of Exchange Act.

Working knowledge of INCO terms.

Working knowledge of ICC Opinions.

Working knowledge of URR 525.

Working knowledge of UCP 500.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Working knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Working knowledge of trade finance.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

General understanding of the specific risks, and relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

and the second of the second o

m habitale bere digital transpolation in the street Setting and it may be appeared by the street of the AOCI in the street of th

are and marketing problems of their separations.

and the felt of the course of the metric and state of the land of the land of the state of the fall of

Title: Authorise and release an import letter of credit/amendment.

Range: sight credit, acceptance credit, deferred payment

credit, red clause credit, revolving credit, negotiation credit, standby credit.

Level:

4

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

16

Issue Date: Review Date: April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to authorise and release the letter of credit/amendment. Authorise and release payment of

drawings and attend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standard for processing import letters of credit. It is recommended that persons attempting this unit standard have had some experience in processing letters of credit prior to being assessed on this unit standard.

Persons attempting this unit standard must demonstrate competence in the given range of the forms of import letters of credit.

Specific Outcome No. 1

Authorise and release the letter of credit/amendment.

Assessment Criteria

- 1.1 The application for the letter of credit/amendment is received for authorisation and checked for completeness, logical consistency and compliance with UCP 500, URR 525 and according to the bank's policy.
- 1.2 The application for the letter of credit/amendment is checked for compliance with exchange control regulations and according to standard procedures.

Range: compliance with relevant regulations, insurance, import permit, indemnity, terms of procedures. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

- 1.3 The required credit authorisation is checked according to the bank's policy.
- 1.4 The processing accuracy of the existing input is checked as required by the bank.
- 1.5 The recovery of revenue associated with the transaction is checked for accuracy and compliance with the bank's policy and procedures and authorised for payment.

- 1.6 Internal control and accounting processes are checked for accuracy, completeness and compliance with standard procedures.
 - Range: Liabilities and exposure are checked to ensure that they were calculated correctly and accounted for in line with the bank's policy.
- 1.7 The decision is taken that the procedural requirements of the application for the letter of credit/amendment have been met as required by the bank.
- 1.8 Authorisation is given for the release of the letter of credit/amendments/reimbursement authority within limits, or referred for higher authorisation, according to the bank's procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Authorise and release payment of drawings.

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The documents from the presenting bank are checked for completeness, compliance with the terms of the letter of credit, each other and advice of negotiation/payment/acceptance/reimbursement according to UCP 500 and the bank's policy.
- The arrangement for the payment of the drawing is checked in line with the client's instructions and the bank's procedures.
 - Range: Drawing currency under a forward exchange contract; recovery of funds from the client's foreign currency account; purchase of forex from treasury on the client's behalf; recovery of funds from a Rand account. Evidence of completeness across the full range is required.
- 2.3 The calculation of charges and the preparation of entries are checked in the manner required by the bank and authorised for payment.
- 2.4 The adjustment of liabilities and the preparation of exposure entries are checked as required by the bank.
- 2.5 Advice to all parties is checked according to UCP 500 and standard procedures.
 - Range: Details, accuracy, correct format, appropriate parties, compliance with the letter of credit. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.
- 2.6 The payment of drawings is authorised and released or referred for further authorisation as required by the bank

Range: Sight, USANCE drawings.

2.7 The authorisation of funds for transfer is checked in line with the letter of credit and/or re-imbursement instructions.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Attend to queries.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures and UCP 500.
- 3.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
 - Range: Query taken up with the client, foreign bank, other parties to the transaction and an internal departments.
- 3.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- 3 Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.1 The learner is able to do a credit authorisation on the application.
- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process letter of credit/amendment.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between letter of credit/amendment and exchange control regulations.

ere e til er i ga spilit i ga 🔒 espilit

2. Embedded Knowledge

Thorough understanding of types of letters of credit.

Thorough knowledge of the bank's business allocation policy.

Thorough knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of the Bills of Exchange Act.

Thorough knowledge of the INCO terms.

Thorough knowledge of the URR 525.

Thorough knowledge of the UCP 500.

Thorough knowledge and understanding of ICC Opinions.

Thorough knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of applicable exchange controls.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Thorough knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

lander kommende i der av der av en grave i påre i flere et se er kræde er eller det av en skræde i det skræde Litter hærere i her der i ek færere i delakter eg av er kræde av kræde året fre i gjælet tigget i de

Thorough knowledge of internal controls.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

Thorough understanding of the specific risks, and relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Title: Process export letters of credit.

Range: unconfirmed irrevocable letter of credit, confirmed irrevocable letter of credit, sight credit, acceptance credit, deferred payment credit, red clause credit, revolving credit, negotiation credit, standby credit, transferable credit.

Level:

4

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

28

Issue Date: Review Date: April 2001 April 2004

Field: Sub-field: Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to explain rules and regulations related to export letters of credit, advise an export letter of credit, process the drawing documents and deal with any queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standard for processing import letters of credit. It is recommended that persons attempting this unit standard have had some experience in processing export letters of credit prior to being assessed on this unit standard.

Persons attempting this unit standard must demonstrate competence in at least four forms of export letters of credit.

July 1 Managar

Specific Outcome No.1

Explain rules and regulations related to export letters of credit.

Assessment Criteria

1.1 The nature of the product is understood and explained according to the specific bank's policy and procedure.

Range: types of export letters of credit, the nature of the underlying transaction, how the product works, the process for payment, the parties to the transactions and their rights and obligations, terms and conditions, pricing, features and benefits. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.2 The relevant South African legislation affecting export letters of credit is identified and explained in line with the intention of the legislation, and bank policy and procedure in the manner required by the bank.

Range: Exchange Control regulations, Bills of Exchange Act. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.3 The relevant international regulations and accepted practice governing export letters of credit are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: URR 525, UCP500, INCO terms, ICC opinions, international payment systems, SWIFT messages and format. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.4 The risks and risk management processes associated with the export letter of credit are understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: risks from the client's and the banks perspective, country risk, acceptable practice, insurance, payment terms, certain technical risks, exchange rate risk, credit risk, risk associated with non-compliance with the terms and conditions of the letter of credit, basic risk management practices associated with export letters of credit. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

1.5 The specific banks electronic process for processing export letters of credit is understood and explained in the manner required by the bank.

Range: access to the system, opening a record, printing records/reports, making amendments, correcting mistakes, processing and capturing rules and regulations.

Specific Outcome No.2

Advise an export letter of credit.

Assessment Criteria

SAMBANTAN TARA

- 2.1 The letter of credit is received and recorded according to standard procedures.
- 2.2 The letter of credit is scrutinised for completeness and compliance with UCP 500.
- 2.3 The letter of credit is scrutinised for risk implications based on the terms and conditions of the credit.

Range: country risk, acceptable practice, insurance, payment terms, certain technical risks. Evidence of competence across the full range is required.

- 2.4 Confirmation is arranged on request according to standard procedures.
- 2.5 The beneficiary is advised of the letter of credit and of possible risks and restrictions applicable to export letters of credit in the manner required by the bank.
- 2.6 Entries for charges, liabilities and exposure are prepared as appropriate and according to standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Process drawing documents.

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 Documents presented by the beneficiary are checked for compliance with the letter of credit and according to UCP 500 and are referred for higher authority if required in terms of the bank's policy.
- 3.2 The findings are recorded and the beneficiary is advised as per standard procedures.
- 3.3 Discrepant documents are handled as required by the letter of credit, UCP 500 and the bank's standard procedures.
- 3.4 Clean documents are forwarded in terms of the letter of credit, UCP 500 and standard procedures.
- 3.5 Reimbursement is processed according to the terms of the letter of credit and the bank's policy.
 - Range: Sight, USANCE and deferred payment drawings. Evidence of competence across the full range is required
- 3.6 Settlement is concluded in line with the client's instructions and the bank's procedures.
- 3.7 Credit authority is obtained for the release of payment prior to the receipt of reimbursement and in line with the bank's policy.
- 3.8 Relevant parties are advised according to UCP 500 and standard procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Attend to queries.

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 4.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 4.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 4.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.

4.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- 2 Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learner is able to evaluate and process letters of credit.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.6 The learner is able to use technology to process the drawing documents and payments
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between the letter of credit and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Working understanding of types of letters of credit.

Working knowledge of letter of credit issuing procedures and systems.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment system.

Working knowledge of the Bills of Exchange Act.

Working knowledge of INCO terms.

Working knowledge of ICC opinions.

Working knowledge of URR 525.

Working knowledge of UCP 500.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of SWIFT message formats.

Working knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Working knowledge of trade finance.

Operation and computer system knowledge sufficient to locate the necessary information and complete the task/function.

General understanding of the specific risks, and relavant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Title: Authorise and release forward exchange contracts

Range: Including but not limited to Foreign Exchange Contracts (FEC's), futures and

derivatives.

Level:

4

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

12

Issue Date:

April 2001

Review Date:

April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to authorise and release the establishment of a forward exchange contract, authorise and

release drawings under the contract and attend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standard

for processing forward exchange contracts.

Specific Outcome No. 1

Authorise and release an established contract

Assessment Criteria

- The completed forward exchange contract is received for authorisation and checked for 1.1 completeness, logical consistency, compliance with the bank's policy and the client's instructions.
- The forward exchange contract is checked for compliance with exchange control 1.2 regulations and according to standard procedures.
- The required credit authorisation is checked according to the bank's policy. 1.3
- The processing accuracy of the existing input is checked as required by the bank. 1.4
- The recovery of revenue associated with the transaction is checked for accuracy and 1.5 compliance with the bank's policy and procedures and authorised for payment.
- Internal control and accounting processes are checked for accuracy, completeness and 1.6 compliance with standard procedures.
- The decision is taken that the procedural requirements of the forward exchange contract 1.7 have been met as required by the bank.
- Authorisation is given for the release of the forward exchange contract within limits, or 1.8 referred for higher authorisation, according to the bank's procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Authorise and release drawings under the contract

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The recording of details of drawings is checked for accuracy, completeness and compliance with standard procedure.
- 2.2 The preparation of entries for the disposal of the currency pair is checked for accuracy, completeness and compliance with standard procedures, and authorised for processing.
- 2.3 The drawing under the contract is authorised and released or referred for further authorisation as required by the bank.
- 2.4 The recording of drawings under the contract is checked for accuracy and completeness.
- 2.5 The preparation of early drawings/rollovers/cancellations is checked for compliance with standard procedures and authorised for processing.
- 2.6 The calculation of charges and the preparation of entries are checked in the manner required by the bank and authorised for payment.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Attend to queries

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.
- 3.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 3.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 3.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- 2 Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learner is able to evaluate and process forward exchange contracts.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between forward exchange contracts and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking policy and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Thorough knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Thorough knowledge of internal controls.

and the second of the second o

Thorough knowledge of appropriate SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury.

Thorough knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Sound knowledge of the different types of international payment mechanisms

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and complete the task.

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreign exchange transactions.

Working understanding of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

appearing the control of the second s

energy of the second second

Title: Authorise and release foreign finance loans

Range: Import, export and working capital loans.

Level:

5

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

16

Issue Date: Review Date: April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to authorise and release foreign finance facility, authorise and release draw down of funds, sign off the repayment of the loan and attend to queries.

Learning Assumptions:

This unit standard should be completed subsequent to the unit standard

for processing foreign finance loans.

Specific Outcome No. 1

Authorise and release foreign finance facility

Assessment Criteria

- 1.1 The rules and regulations relating to processing a foreign finance facility are understood and explained according to the banks policy and procedure.
- 1.2 The processed request for foreign finance facility is received for authorisation and checked for completeness, logical consistency and compliance with the bank's policy.
- 1.3 The foreign finance facility is checked for compliance with exchange control regulations.
- 1.4 The required credit authorisation is checked according to the bank's policy.
- 1.5 The processing accuracy of the existing input is checked as required by the bank.
- 1.6 The recovery of revenue associated with the transaction is checked for accuracy and compliance with the bank's policy and procedures and authorised for payment.
- 1.7 Internal control and accounting processes are checked for accuracy, completeness and compliance with standard procedures.
- 1.8 The decision is taken that the procedural requirements of the foreign finance facility have been met as required by the bank.
- 1.9 Authorisation is given for the release of the foreign finance facility within limits, or

referred for higher authorisation, according to the bank's procedures.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Authorise and release draw down of funds

Assessment Criteria

- 2.1 The processing and confirmation of funds raised is checked for accuracy, completeness, compliance with the client's request and the bank's procedures and policy.
- 2.2 The preparation for the disposal of funds is checked for accuracy in terms of the client's instructions and the bank's procedures.
- 2.3 The calculation of charges and the preparation of entries are checked in the manner required by the bank and authorised for payment.
- 2.4 The draw down of funds is authorised and released or referred for further authorisation as required by the bank.
- 2.5 The recording of the loan details is checked for accuracy and compliance with exchange control requirements and with bank policy and procedure.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Sign off repayment of foreign finance loan

Assessment Criteria

- 3.1 The arrangements for recovery of funds from the client for repayment of the loan are checked for accuracy, completeness, use of appropriate exchange rate mechanism, compliance with the client's instructions and standard procedure.
- 3.2 Details of repayment are checked for accuracy, compliance with exchange control and the client's instructions.
- 3.3 The foreign finance loan is signed off as repaid and the record of repayment is checked for completeness and compliance with standard procedures.
- 3.4 The recovery of revenue associated with the transaction is checked for accuracy and compliance with the bank's policy and procedures and authorised for payment.

Specific Outcome No. 4

Attend to queries

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 The nature of the query received is identified according to the bank's procedures.
- 4.2 Queries are attended to as required by the nature of the query and the bank's procedures.

- 4.3 All queries are handled in a timely manner that promotes customer service.
- 4.4 Administrative tasks related to the query are completed according to the bank's procedures.
- 4.5 Unresolved queries are escalated to the appropriate authority as required by the bank's policy.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETOA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.4 The learners is able to evaluate and process a foreign finance facility.
- 1.5 The learner is able to communicate effectively when handling applicable queries.
- 1.7 The learner is able to understand the relationship between foreign finance facilities and exchange control regulations.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking policy and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of appropriate SWIFT message formats.

Thorough knowledge of exchange rates and treasury procedures.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Thorough knolwedge of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and complete the task.

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreign

exchange transactions.

General understanding of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

General knowledge of the requirements of the Banks Act.

Working knowledge of the Code of Banking Practice.

Title: Consult to clients on trade related issues.

Level:

5

Version: 1

Language: E

Credits:

20

Issue Date: Review Date: April 2001 April 2004

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Banking

Purpose:

This unit standard is for those who provide introductory information to business's on trade and related banking services. Persons credited with this unit standard will be able to identify a client's trade requirements. present the trade context, explain trade finance risk and select an

appropriate solution.

Learning Assumptions:

Persons attempting this unit standard are required to have a thorough understanding of trade related products and services offered by the bank, and a thorough knowledge of economic principles governing international trade. They should have an understanding of the Exchange Control rulings, exchange rate mechanisms and currencies.

Specific Outcome No. 1

Determine trade requirements.

Assessment Criteria

The nature of the business is determined to establish the desirability of the bank's 1.1 involvement.

Range: financial stability, value of relationship, legality. Evidence of competence across the full range is required

1.2 The nature of the business's trade is established in discussion with the client.

Range: type and terms of trade, type of goods, local and international markets, history of trade, countries and trading parties. Evidence of competence across the full range is required

- 1.3 The nature and range of trade finance requirements are explored in discussion with the client.
 - Range: Cash-flow requirements, convenience, access to funds, currency, auxiliary protection. Evidence of competence across the full range is required
- The basis of pricing for products and services is discussed in the manner required by the bank.
- 1.5 The client is dealt with in a polite and professional manner according to the Code of

Banking Practice.

1.6 Client contact is recorded promptly and accurately as required by the bank.

Specific Outcome No. 2

Present trade context.

Assessment Criteria

2.1 A broad introduction to South Africa's general trade context is presented to the client as required by the bank.

Range: economic issues, level of imports and exports, trade growth areas, identified opportunities, government incentives. Evidence of competence across the full range is required

- 2.2 Broad implications of trade agreements with different countries are discussed in terms of their impact on the client's business.
- 2.3 Legal and statutory requirements for participation in the export/import business are explained broadly and the client is directed to further sources of information for more detail.
- 2.4 Key incentives and conditions for participation are introduced in concept and the client is directed to further sources of information for more detail.
- 2.5 Key elements of Exchange Control are presented and explained in terms of their impact on the client's business.
- 2.6 The banks' role and responsibilities in terms of trade finance are presented in the manner required by the bank.

Specific Outcome No. 3

Present financial instruments of trade.

Range: currency-based finance, factoring, documentary collections, guarantees, foreign currency accounts and trade finance products. Evidence of competence across the full range is required

- 3.1 A range of trade product and service options is identified in terms of match with the client's needs.
- 3.2 The trade instruments are broadly introduced and the specific features and benefits of the trade products are explained so that the client can make an informed decision.
- 3.3 The terms and conditions of use of each instrument is explained in a manner that the client should understand.
- 3.4 The risks inherent in each instrument are described and risk management options are presented to the client for consideration.
- 3.5 The relevant Exchange Control regulations relating to each instrument are explained and

the client's responsibilities are outlined.

3.6 Pricing on products is presented in the manner required by the bank.

Specific Outcome No. 4

Explain trade finance risk

Assessment Criteria

- 4.1 Trade finance risks relevant to the client's business, and the instruments to be used are identified and presented in a manner the client should understand.
- 4.2 The specific business implications of currency risk are explained in a manner the client should understand.
- 4.3 The risks born by the respective parties to the transaction are presented and means for managing such risks are introduced in concept.
- 4.4 The implications of non-performance on the terms and conditions of international payment instruments are explained in a manner the client should understand.
- 4.5 The implications of the range of risks on the client's specific trade requirements are identified and presented to the client so that they can make an informed decision.
- 4.6 The client's role and responsibility in managing the risks associated with the instruments are outlined in a manner the client should understand.
- 4.7 The banks role and responsibility in managing the risks is explained as required by the bank and in line with the Banking Code of Practice.
- 4.8 The client's concerns are addressed politely and to the client's satisfaction.

Specific Outcome No. 5

Suggest an appropriate solution.

Assessment Criteria

- 5.1 A suitable product or range of trade products is suggested in line with the business's trade requirements.
- 5.2 The application process and requirements are explained in the manner required by the bank.
- 5.3 Specific documentation required is identified and its relevance explained in the manner required by the bank.
- 5.4 The link to banking facilities and credit are explained to existing clients, or the process of applying for credit facilities is explained in the manner required by the bank.
- 5.5 The client is provided with written documentation outlining services as required by the bank.

ACCREDITATION PROCESS (INCLUDING MODERATION)

- Anyone assessing a learner against this unit standard must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable achievement of this unit standard or assessing this unit standard must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- 3 Moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the moderation guidelines in the relevant qualification and the agreed ETQA procedures.

Therefore anyone wishing to be assessed against this unit standard may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution which is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Special Notes

1. Critical Cross - Field Outcome

- 1.1 The learner is able to match the trade products with the clients needs.
- 1.4 The learner is able to analyse the clients needs and suggest an appropriate solution.
- 1.5 The learner is able to explain various aspects off trade finance risk to the client.
- 1.6 The learner is able to understand the relationship between the clients business and legal/statutory requirements for participation in the import/export markets.

2. Embedded Knowledge

Detailed knowledge of specific banking policy and procedures relating to the task/function performed.

Working knowledge of internal and international payment systems.

Working knowledge of internal controls.

Working knowledge of exchange rates and treasury.

Working knowledge of relevant exchange control regulations.

Sound knowledge of foreign exchange and trade related products.

Thorough knowledge of trade finance.

Operating and computer systems knowledge sufficient to locate necessary information and complete the task.

General understanding of the specific risks, relevant policies and laws relating to foreing exchange transactions.

Understanding of the different types of foreign finance facilities.

Customer service skills.

Presentation skills.

No. 1204

21 November 2001



SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY (SAQA)

In accordance with regulation 24(c) of the National Standards Bodies Regulations of 28 March 1998, the Standards Generating Body (SGB) for

Human Resource Management and Practices

Registered by NSB 03, Business, Commerce and Management Studies, publishes the following unit standards for public comment.

This notice contains the titles, fields, sub-fields, NQF levels, credits, and purposes of the qualifications, and the titles and specific outcomes of the unit standards upon which qualifications are based. The full qualifications and unit standards can be accessed via the SAQA web-site at www.saqa.co.za. Copies may also be obtained from the Directorate of Standards Setting and Development at the SAQA offices, 659 Pienaar street, Brooklyn, Pretoria.

Comment on the qualifications and unit standards should reach SAQA at the address **below** and no later than 19 December 2001. All correspondence should be marked Standards Setting – SGB for Human Resource Management and Practices and addressed to

The Director: Standard Setting and Development SAQA

Attention: Mr. D Mphuthing
Postnet Suite 248
Private Bag X06
Waterkloof
0145
or faxed to 012 – 482 0907

(SAMUEL B.A. ISAACS EXECUTIVE OFFICER

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES NQF 5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies - NSB 03

Sub-field:

Human Resources Management and Practices

Level:

Credit:

240

Issue date: Review date:

Rationale of the qualification

Organisations require a reliable indicator that a person is competent to operationalise some aspects of the core processes and practices at a basic level across the four role clusters identified in the field analysis conducted by the SGB for Human Resources Management and Practices:

- strategic planning for human resources management and practices
- acquisition, development and utilisation of people
- establishment and improvement of labour and employee relations
- compensation and administration related to human resources management and practices.

Holding the National Diploma in Human Resources Management and Practices will serve as an indicator to organisations that a person is competent in this regard.

Organisations also need the qualification as a benchmark to gauge the competence of people in the organisation against those of their local and international competitors.

Learners need the qualification to increase their access to employment. It will enable holders to enter learning programmes for a degree in Human Resources Management and Practices with a specialist focus in one or more of the four role clusters.

Providers of education and training in the field need the qualification to facilitate portability of learner credits between provider institutions.

Purpose of the qualification

This diploma will be useful to people who operationalise some aspects of the core processes and practices at a basic level across the four role clusters in human resources management and practices:

strategic planning for human resources management and practices

- acquisition, development and utilisation of people
- establishment and improvement of labour and employee relations
- compensation and administration related to human resources management and practices.

Holders of the qualification will be able to operationalise some aspects of the core human resources management processes at a basic level and integrate them into an organisation's business processes. Holding the qualification will enable holders to enter learning programmes for a generalist degree in Human Resources Management and Practices.

Holding this qualification could serve as a requirement for professional registration at associate level.

Access to the Qualification

To meet the requirements described as "Learning assumed to be in place" in section 9 below and in the component unit standards, holders of Further Education and Training Certificate ETC or equivalent qualification will have access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

It is assumed that learners have communication and mathematical competence at one level below that required for the fundamental components of the qualification.

Exit level Outcomes

Holders of this qualification will be able to:

- 1. Co-ordinate and contribute to the management of some aspects of all of the four role clusters related to human resources management and practices:
- provide information for the development of policies
- participate in the development of procedures for processes related to human resources management and practices in accordance with legislative requirements
- recruit and induct new employees
- contribute to the development of employees
- supervise a work units and manage individual and team performance
- contribute to the establishment and improvement of labour and employee relations (including contributing to employee assistance and wellness programmes)
- contribute to the establishment, maintenance and utilisation of an information system related to human resources management and practices (including compensation).
- Adhere to legislative requirements and organisational policies and procedures when co-ordinating and contributing to the management of some of the core processes related to human resources management and practices, as described in exit level outcome 1 above.
- 3. Promote best human resources management practices in an organisation
- 4. Contribute to the monitoring of Health and Safety at the workplace
- Identify strengths and areas for improvement in own learning through self-reflection and reflection on organisational human resources management and practices.

Associated Assessment Criteria

- Contributions are made in accordance with organizational policies and procedures, client requirements and legal requirements.
- Legislation and organizational policies and procedures relevant to the core processes are correctly identified and appropriately applied to a given situation.
- Best practices relevant to operational responsibilities are correctly identified.
- Appropriate action is planned and implemented to promote best practices in the organization.
- Contributions to the monitoring of health and safety are appropriate to own responsibilities in the organization and in accordance with legislative and organizational requirements
- Strengths and areas for improvement in own learning are correctly identified and adequately evaluated.
- Strengths and areas for improvement in organizational human resources management and practices are correctly evaluated.

International comparability

This qualification and the component unit standards have been compared with similar qualifications from the following countries:

- New Zealand
- Scotland
- Australia.

In addition, the abilities described in the unit standards have also been compared with the findings of the research commissioned by the World Federation of Personnel Management Associations (WFPMA) as contained in the report by Chris Brewster, Elaine Farndale and Jos van Ommeren, **HR Competencies and Professional Standards** (Cranfield University, June 2000).

In general this qualification and its component unit standards compare well with their international counterparts. The only major differences are in formatting and scope of coverage or focus. The qualification found to be the most comparable to this one is Scottish Vocational Qualification (SQV) no. G478 Personnel Support Level 3. The differences in the NVQ and NQF level structures make direct equivalation difficult.

Integrated Assessment

For award of the qualification, a candidate must achieve each unit standard as per item 5 above. In addition, candidates must demonstrate the ability to engage in a supportive function in an integrative way, as described in the exit level outcomes in item 11 above, dealing with divergent and "random" demands effectively, in accordance with the assessment criteria set for the exit level outcomes above.

Assessors should develop and conduct their own integrates assessment against the exit level, specific and critical outcomes I a manner that takes account of established assessment principles and makes use of a range of formative and summative assessment methods.

Recognition of prior learning

This qualification can be achieved wholly or in part through recognition of prior learning in terms of the criteria laid out.

Evidence can be presented in a variety of forms, including international or previous local qualifications, reports, testimonials mentioning functions performed, work records, portfolios, videos of practice and performance records.

All such evidence should be judged according to the general principles of assessment described in the note to assessors in section 13 above.

Articulation possibilities

This qualification will able to with other qualifications in the sub-field as well as provide articulation possibilities with a number of other fields, including, ETDP and the humanities. The document "A Framework for Qualifications for Professionals and Practitioners in People Management Processes" explains the relations between these qualifications

Moderation Options

Moderation shall be at the discretion of the relevant ETQA, so long as it complies with SAQA requirements.

Criteria for registration of assessors

Assessors shall have the technical competence to achieve the qualification themselves and must hold a qualification one level above or equivalent, and should demonstrate evaluative ability in relation to the outcomes of the qualification.

Assessment expertise must be evidenced through registered assessor unit standards.

Notes for assessors:

Assessors should keep the following general principles in mind when designing and conducting assessments:

- Focus the assessment activities on gathering evidence in terms of the main outcomes expressed in the titles of the unit standards to ensure assessment is integrated rather than fragmented. Remember we want to declare the person competent in terms of the title. Where assessment at title level is unmanageable, then focus assessment around each specific outcome, or groups of specific outcomes.
- Make sure evidence is gathered across the entire range, wherever it applies. Assessment activities should be as close to the real performance as possible, and where simulations or role-plays are used, there should be supporting evidence to show the candidate is able to perform in the real situation.
- All assessments should be conducted in line with the following well documented principles of assessment: appropriateness, fairness, manageability, integration into work or learning, validity, direct, authentic, sufficient, systematic, open and consistent as defined below:

Principles of assessment:

- Appropriateness: The method of assessment is suited to the performance being assessed.
- Fairness: The method of assessment does not present any barriers to achievements, which are not related to the evidence.
- Manageability: The methods used make for easily arranged, cost-effective assessments that do not unduly interfere with learning.
- Integration into work or learning: Evidence collection is integrated into the work or learning process
 where this is appropriate and feasible.

- Validity: The assessment focuses on the requirements laid down in the Standard; i.e. the assessment is fit for purpose.
- Direct: The activities in the assessment mirror the conditions of actual performance as closely as possible
- Authenticity: The assessor is satisfied that the work being assessed is attributable to the person being assessed.
- Sufficient: The evidence collected establishes that all criteria have been met and that performance to the required Standard can be repeated consistently.
- Systematic: Planning and recording is sufficiently rigorous to ensure that assessment is fair.
- Open: Learners can contribute to the planning and accumulation of evidence. Assessment candidates understand the assessment process and the criteria that apply.
- Consistent: The same assessor would make the same judgement again in similar circumstances. The
 judgement made is similar to the judgement that would be made by other assessors.

At least 10 credits at Level 5 shall be compulsory from the field of Communication Studies and Language, and in addition at least 16 credits shall be compulsory from the sub-field of End-user Computing

Francisco de la lacción de lacción d	Level 1	Cr	Level 3	Cr	Level 4	Cr	Level 5	Cr	Level 6	Cr	Total
Fundamental	* ************************************		7. 7.				Communication studies and Language End-user Computing	10 16			- Total
								26	,		26

All unit standards in the core section are compulsory (177 credits)

	F 1	Level 1	Cr	Level 3	Cr	Level 4	Cr	Level 5	Cr	Level 6	Cr	Total
Core		Frame and implement an individual action plan to improve productivity within an	3	Demonstrate understanding of employment relations in an organisation	3	Supervise work unit to achieve work unit objectives (individual and teams)	12	Measure productivity	14	Conduct an organisational needs analysis	10	Tota
	1.0	organisational	9 (5)		2.				8	. 0		0 A14
		unit				N				Ē.		
				Represent stakeholder/s in consultations and discussions on matters that arise	3	Manage individual and team performance	8	Recruit and select candidates to fill defined positions	9	Facilitate the resolution of employee grievances	5	
				at shop floor level			Marie Control	·	9.			\$77
					1	Induct new employees	6	Develop training materials	12	Conduct a disciplinary hearing	5	it it
ě	*11					Plan learning events	10	Facilitate learning using a variety of	18	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		84
			1				385	methodologies				63
						Manage a skills development course	6	Institute disciplinary action	8			
	50	*		** 0		Plan and conduct an assessment	15	Monitor and advise on substantive conditions	5			100
are a	0.20			* * *	8			of employment and				8.0
	¥1 6			9 24	9			related rights and obligations in an				: 1
				EE DE	۱, ۱	100		organisation	20	9 -44	ing.	

,	Level 1	Cr	Level 3	Cr	Level 4	Cr	Level 5	Cr	Level 6	Cr	Total
Core	, 1				Conduct elementary research in education, training and development or occupation	8	Draft an employment contract	3			
2			3		Occupational developments	4	Manage the capture, storage and retrieval of human resources information using an information system	3			
	e ⁶ *				Participate in the implementation and utilisation of equity related processes Administer data,	5		DOMESTIC AND A STATE OF THE STA	a a		
	9	0			systems, payments and provide advice related to compensation						
		3		6		79		72		20	180

At least 10 credits must be selected from the following list. In addition, the learner must select other unit standards totalling at least 27 credits for the listed electives and/ or from the sub-field Basic Accounting/ Budgeting and/ or General Business Management and/ or End-user Computing in order to achieve a minimum of 240 credits.

	Level 4	Cr	Level 5	Cr	Total
Elective	Evaluate a course	8	Operationalise productivity improvement strategy, objectives and processes	3	
	Facilitate targeted skills development	14	Promote productivity improvement strategy and objectives Design and conduct research (ETD) Manage a learnership/ learning programme	13 12 12	
			Manage individual careers Manage the design, development and review of a human resources information system	5 3	

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES NQF 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Core

1. Title: Recruit and select candidates to fill defined positions

2. Title: Institute disciplinary action

3. Title: Monitor and advise on substantive conditions of employment and related rights and

obligations in an orgnaisation

4. Title: Draft an employment contract

Elective

5. Title: Manage individual careers

6. Title: Manage the design, development and review of a human resources information

system

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

Core

7. Title: Conduct an organisational needs analysis

8. Title: Facilitate the resolution of employee grievances

9. Title: Conduct a disciplinary hearing

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES NQF 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

1. Title: Recruit and select candidates to fill the defined positions

Specific Outcome 1.1 Plan and prepare for recruitment and selection.

Specific Outcome 1.2 Recruit applicants.

Specific Outcome 1.3 Select staff.

2. Title: Institute disciplinary action

Specific Outcome 2.1 Identify and classify transgression.

Specific Outcome 2.2 Implement procedure to handle non-dismissible offences.

Specific Outcome 2.3 Implement procedure to handle dismissible offences.

Specific Outcome 2.4 Represent employee at disciplinary hearing.

3. Title: Monitor and advise on substantive conditions of employment and related rights and obligations in an organisation

Specific Outcome 3.1 Identify rights and obligations in terms of statutes, contracts and agreements.

Specific Outcome 3.2 Ensure compliance with statutory and other conditions of employment.

Specific Outcome 3.3 Provide advice on the application of substantive conditions.

4. Title: Draft an employment contract

Specific Outcome 4.1 Analyse the conditions of employment within the organisation.

Specific Outcome 4.2 Determine the minimum legal conditions of employment.

Specific Outcome 4.3 Draft an employment contract.

5. Title: Manage individual careers

Specific Outcome 5.1 Gather and analyse information for individual career planning.

Specific Outcome 5.2 Facilitate and manage the career planning process.

Specific Outcome 5.3 Monitor individual career progress.

6. Title: Manage the design, development and review of a human resources information system

Specific Outcome 6.1 Manage the design and development of an information system for human resources management.

Specific Outcome 6.2 Review the information system for human resources management.

Specific Outcome 6.3 Make recommendations for improvements of the information system for human resources management.

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

7. Title: Conduct an organisational needs analysis

Specific Outcome 7.1 Analyse the current situation.

Specific Outcome 7.2 Determine and describe agreed short and long term organisational objectives.

Specific Outcome 7.3 Define the gap and make recommendations for bridging the gap.

Specific Outcome 7.4 Produce a written report of the results.

8. Title: Facilitate the resolution of employee grievances

Specific Outcome 8.1 Develop structures and procedures to resolve employee grievances.

Specific Outcome 8.2 Implement structures and procedures to resolve employee grievances.

Specific Outcome 8.3 Monitor the application of the grievance procedures and adjust when required.

Specific Outcome 8.4 Evaluate, analyse and address grievance patterns.

9. Title: Conduct a disciplinary hearing

Specific Outcome 9.1 Conduct and manage the hearing.

Specific Outcome 9.2 Implement procedure to handle non-dismissible offences.

Specific Outcome 9.3 Hear pleadings.

Specific Outcome 9.4 Take a decision as to sanction.

Specific Outcome 9.5 Inform employee of and record decisions.

Specific Outcome 9.6 Ensure that proceedings and decisions are recorded.

No. 1205

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES SUPPORT NQF 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies - NSB 03

Sub-field:

Human Resources Management and Practices

Level:

4

Credit:

120

Issue date:

Review date:

Rationale of the qualification

Organisations require persons who are able to support human resources management processes and practices.

There is also a need for an initial qualification as a possible first leg of a learning progression path in the human resources management and practices field.

Learners need the qualification to increase their access to employment: It will enable persons who are fulfilling some of the support roles in human resources management and practices without formal qualifications to obtain recognition for their competence.

The specified components in the core category will ensure portability across the Human Resources Management and Practices role clusters, whilst the elective category will make provision for specialisation in a specific area.

Purpose of the qualification

This qualification will be useful to people who support and participate in human resources management and practices.

People credited with this qualification are able to:

- support the implementation of processes and systems related to human resources management and practices in one or more of the following role clusters:
 - acquisition, development and utilisation of people
 - establishment and improvement of labour and employee relations
 - compensation and administration related to human resources management and practices

- collect, collate, and distribute information related to people management in line with a given plan
- provide advice on or refer to appropriate person in response to queries on organisation procedures related to people management
- demonstrate basic understanding of people dynamics and impact in the workplace
- demonstrate basic understanding of the functioning of business and the role and contribution of individuals within organisations.

Access to the Qualification

Access to the qualification is open, bearing in mind the learning assumed to be in place.

Learning assumed to be in place

It is assumed that learners have communication and mathematical competence at one level below that required for the fundamental components of the qualification.

Exit level Outcomes

On completion of this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Perform administrative duties related to human resources management and practices
- Support the implementation of procedures and systems related to human resources management and practices in all of the following role clusters:
 - strategic planning for human resources management and practices
 - acquisition, development and utilisation of people
 - establishment and improvement of labour and employee relations
 - compensation and administration related to human resources management and practices
- Collect, collate, and distribute information related to human resources management and practices in the context of a predetermined plan
- Provide advice on or refer to appropriate person in response to queries on organisation procedures related to human resources management and practices
- Demonstrate basic understanding of people dynamics and impact in the workplace
- Demonstrate basic understanding of the functioning of business and the role and contribution of individuals within organisations
- Identify strengths and areas for improvement in own learning through self-reflection and reflection on support for organisational human resources management and practices.

Associated Assessment Criteria

- Administrative duties are correctly identified and interpreted
- Administrative duties are performed within agreed time frames in accordance with instructions and requirements
- Obstacles to performing administrative duties are identified and appropriate action is taken to remove obstacles oneself or with the help of others.
- A plan to collect and collate relevant information is correctly interpreted and executed according to the requirements of the plan.

- Appropriate decisions are made to provide advice or to refer to someone else in response to queries
 related to human resources management and practices.
- The principles of interactions between people are correctly explained.
- The impact on the functioning of own organization of positive and negative interactions between people is correctly identified and explained.
- The principles of successful business operations are correctly explained in the context of own organization.
- Categories of roleplayers and their respective contributions to own organization are correctly identified and explained.
- Support for the implementation of human resources management and practices procedures and processes is demonstrated in accordance with best practices and organizational and legal requirements.
- Strengths and areas for improvement in own learning are correctly identified and adequately evaluated.

International comparability

This qualification and the component unit standards have been compared with similar qualifications from the following countries:

- New Zealand
- Scotland
- Australia.

In addition, the abilities described in the unit standards have also been compared with the findings of the research commissioned by the World Federation of Personnel Management Associations (WFPMA) as contained in the report by Chris Brewster, Elaine Farndale and Jos van Ommeren, HR Competencies and Professional Standards (Cranfield University, June 2000).

In general this qualification and its component unit standards compare well with their international counterparts. The only major differences are in formatting and scope of coverage or focus. The qualification found to be the most comparable to this one is Scottish Vocational Qualification (SQV) no. G478 Personnel Support Level 3, albeit that SQV Level 3 seems to be more comparable to the South African NQF Level 5 and that the SVQ qualification is consequently at a somewhat higher level. The differences in the NVQ and NQF level structures make direct comparison difficult.

Integrated Assessment

For award of the qualification, a candidate must achieve each unit standard.

In addition, candidates must demonstrate the ability to engage in a supportive function in an integrative way, dealing with divergent and "random" demands effectively, in accordance with the assessment criteria set for the exit level outcomes.

Assessors should develop and conduct their own integrates assessment against the exit level, specific and critical outcomes I a manner that takes account of established assessment principles and makes use of a range of formative and summative assessment methods.

Recognition of prior learning

This qualification can be achieved wholly or in part through recognition of prior learning in terms of the criteria laid out.

Evidence can be presented in a variety of forms, including international or previous local qualifications, reports, testimonials mentioning functions performed, work records, portfolios, videos of practice and performance records.

All such evidence should be judged according to the general principles of assessment described in the Note for assessors under Criteria for Registration of Assessors below.

Articulation possibilities

This qualification will able to articulate with other qualifications in the sub-field once the other qualifications have been registered. The document "A Framework for Qualifications for Professionals and Practitioners in People Management Processes" explains the relations between these qualifications.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the relevant ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the relevant ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs
 policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around
 assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the
 moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass achievement of
 the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the integrated competence described
 in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the relevant ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

Assessors shall have the technical competence to achieve the qualification themselves and shall have achieved an assessor qualification as required by the relevant ETQA.

Notes for assessors:

Assessors should keep the following general principles in mind when designing and conducting assessments:

Focus the assessment activities on gathering evidence in terms of the main outcomes expressed in the titles of the unit standards to ensure assessment is integrated rather than fragmented. Remember we want to declare the person competent in terms of the title. Where assessment at title level is unmanageable, then focus assessment around each specific outcome, or groups of specific outcomes.

- Make sure evidence is gathered across the entire range, wherever it applies. Assessment activities should be as close to the real performance as possible, and where simulations or role-plays are used, there should be supporting evidence to show the candidate is able to perform in the real situation.
- All assessments should be conducted in line with the following well documented principles of assessment: appropriateness, fairness, manageability, integration into work or learning, validity, direct, authentic, sufficient, systematic, open and consistent as defined below:

Principles of assessment:

- Appropriateness: The method of assessment is suited to the performance being assessed.
- Fairness: The method of assessment does not present any barriers to achievements, which are not related to the evidence.
- Manageability: The methods used make for easily arranged, cost-effective assessments that do not unduly interfere with learning.
- Integration into work or learning: Evidence collection is integrated into the work or learning process
 where this is appropriate and feasible.
- Validity: The assessment focuses on the requirements laid down in the Standard; i.e. the assessment is fit for purpose.
- Direct: The activities in the assessment mirror the conditions of actual performance as closely as possible
- Authenticity: The assessor is satisfied that the work being assessed is attributable to the person being assessed.
- Sufficient: The evidence collected establishes that all criteria have been met and that performance to the required Standard can be repeated consistently.
- Systematic: Planning and recording is sufficiently rigorous to ensure that assessment is fair.
- Open: Learners can contribute to the planning and accumulation of evidence. Assessment candidates understand the assessment process and the criteria that apply.
- Consistent: The same assessor would make the same judgement again in similar circumstances. The
 judgement made is similar to the judgement that would be made by other assessors.

	z
1	0
1	N
1	ŏ
1	6

Fundamental	Level 1	Cr	Level 2	Cr	Level 3	Cr	Level 4	Cr	Tota
undamentai							Communication studies and Language	20	1014
	₹a = #	1		10			Mathematics	16	la:
		L					End-user Computing	2	60
Core	Demonstrate a critical	4.5	D					- 12	38
,010	understanding of diversity,	4.5	Demonstrate a knowledge	2	Induct a new employee	4	Recruit and select	10	Γ
	change and development		of and produce word			- 50	candidates to fill defined		6.
	in societies		processing documents		99-9	9.49	positions	1	- 10
	Demonstrate a critical	_	using base functions	100		\$3	8		
W 8/		2			Coach learners	10	Participate in the	5	
	awareness of the self as a		8				implementation and	•	8
	physical, mental,		1997			6	utilisation of equity related		
	intellectual and social		50 as as as	14.3			processes	1	
	being with particular belief		*		7.	8 15	P. C.		* 9
	systems.						* I	i	
	Understand human mental	2		A. th	Demonstrate an	3	10	139	
	and physical development,		1 A A 0		understanding of		1 × 16	İ	
3.00	health and sexuality and			- 14 m	employment relations in				. 1987
	their consequences.	. 5			an organisation	_		1	13.
	Identify and discuss	4	10 8		Represent stakeholder/s in	3	4	700	
X.	different types of business		term to a to		consultations and	3	145 T	8	9
30	and their legal				discussions on matters	60 (00)		8	
-	implications.	22	# E		that arise at shop floor	i i		-	31
- 3	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1			6	level	1		- 1	
*	Demonstrate an	2			level	1	a" .		
tr:	understanding of contracts	· =	(A)			19		1	
	and their sources.			1960		198	11 (a)		
	Demonstrate an	2	fw e f	E 5		1			
22	understanding of the	-	6 9 N N						
102	principles of supply and		30	. 1		-			
	demand and the concept		Toger g	W #	Lage " E B				
90	production.								10
	Develop understanding of	,				1	10 Au		
	individual role in an	4	v 4 %			1		A.	
建			9 2					1	
2	organisation and relate to	1			28 9	*		1	
	the world of work.					1		Į:	

	Level 1	Cr	Level 2	Cr	Level 3	Cr	Level 4	Cr	Total
Core	Frame and implement an individual action plan to improve productivity within an organisational unit								- AO F
		23.5		2		20		15	60.5

Elective credits: Unit standards with a total of 151 credits are listed in this category. This makes provision for either a generalist or a specialist qualification. For a generalist qualification, the learner is required to select unit standards totalling at least 24 credits from the list of elective unit standards in order to achieve at least 120 credits.

Learners wishing to specialise in Human Resources Development Support must select unit standards totalling at least 24 credits from the following only:

Carriers	Level 4		Cr
			12
Elective	Supervise work unit to achieve work unit objectives	1	8
	Manage individual and team performance	i	6
	Prepare learning aids		(622
	Advise and refer learners	1	6
	Plan learning events	1	10
	Evaluate a course	1	8
		ai ai	6
	Manage a skills development course		15
	Plan and conduct assessment of learning		8
10	Conduct elementary field research in education, training and development or occupation		6
	Occupational developments		23070
	Facilitate targeted skills development		14

Learners wishing to specialise in Compensation Support must achieve the two unit standards totalling 8 credits from the following list and the balance from the list above:

above:		C.	Level 5	Cr	Total
Elective	Level 4 Administer data, systems, payments and provide advice related to compensation	5	Manage the capture, storage and retrieval of human resources information using an information system	3	Total

Learners wishing to specialise in Labour Recruitment Support must select unit standards totalling at least 44 credits from the sub-field of Marketing:

carriers w	Level 4	Cr
Elective	Instil in myself a personal marketing culture Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	6
	Identify customers of the business Work as a member of a marketing team	4 4
50	Meet marketing performance standards Take orders from customers to fulfill a need for goods and services	10
	Conduct follow-up with customers to evaluate satisfaction levels	14

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES SUPPORT NQF 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 3

Core

1. Title:

Induct new employees

2. Title:

Demonstrate an understanding of employment relations in an organisation

3. Title:

Represent stakeholder/s in consultations and discussions on matters that arise at

shop floor level

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core

4. Title:

Recruit and select candidates to fill defined positions

5. Title:

Participate in the implementation and utilisation of equity related processes

Elective

6. Title:

Supervise work unit to achieve work unit objectives

7. Title:

Manage individual and team performance

8. Title:

Administer data, systems, payments and provide advice related to compensation

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Elective

9. Title:

Manage the capture, storage and retrieval of human resources information using an

information system

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN HUMAN RESOURCES MANAGEMENT AND PRACTICES SUPPORT NQF 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 3

1	Title:	Induct a new employee

Specific Outcome 1.1 Compile induction plan for new entrant/s.

Specific Outcome 1.2 Prepare environment to accommodate new entrant.

Specific Outcome 1.3 Manage general organisational orientation process.

Specific Outcome 1.4 Implement and monitor job specific induction.

Specific Outcome 1.5 Evaluate effectiveness of induction process.

2. Title: Demonstrate an understanding of employment relations in an organisation

Specific Outcome 2.1 Demonstrate understanding of the various stakeholders and their roles in an

organisation

Specific Outcome 2.2 Demonstrate understanding of organisational policies and procedures

related to employment.

Specific Outcome 2.3 Demonstrate understanding of employment related agreements.

3. Title: Represent stakeholder/s in consultations and discussions on matters that arise at shop floor level

Specific Outcome 3.1 Identify issues for discussion, consultation or negotiation.

Specific Outcome 3.2 Prepare to participate in relevant forum.

Specific Outcome 3.3 Represent constituency in relevant forum.

Specific Outcome 3.4 Provide feedback to stakeholder/s.

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

4. Title: Recruit and select candidates to fill defined positions

Specific Outcome 4.1 Plan and prepare for recruitment and selection.

Specific Outcome 4.2 Recruit applicants.

Specific Outcome 4.3 Select staff.

5. Title: Participate in the implementation and utilisation of equity related processes

Specific Outcome 5.1 Participate in the development of relevant equity related plans and policies.

Specific Outcome 5.2 Communicate equity related plans and policies to stakeholders.

Specific Outcome 5.3 Participate in the implementation of agreed equity related plans and policies.

Specific Outcome 5.4 Contribute to the monitoring and evaluation of equity related plans and

policies.

6. Title: Supervise work unit to achieve work unit objectives

Specific Outcome 6.1 Plan, organise and allocate work.

Specific Outcome 6.2 Manage interpersonal team processes to achieve required outputs.

Specific Outcome 6.3 Evaluate achievement of work unit objectives.

7. Title: Manage individual and team performance

Specific Outcome 7.1 Set performance goals and measures.

Specific Outcome 7.2 Formulate development plans.

Specific Outcome 7.3 Monitor and evaluate performance.

8. Title: Administer data, systems, payments and provide advise related to compensation

Specific Outcome 8.1 Process relevant human resources data.

Specific Outcome 8.2 Effect payments to relevant parties.

Specific Outcome 8.3 Provide advice and support related to compensation.

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

9. Title: Manage the capture, storage and retrieval of human resources information using an information system

Specific Outcome 9.1 Organise the collation of information required for human resources

management.

Specific Outcome 9.2 Organise, control and monitor the storing, recording, maintenance and

retrieval of collated information related to human resources management.

Specific Outcome 9.3 Advise and inform the organisation by providing human resource

information for the use of others.

No. 1206

21 November 2001



SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY (SAQA)

In accordance with regulation 24(c) of the National Standards Bodies Regulations of 28 March 1998, the Standards Generating Body (SGB) for

Project Management

Registered by NSB 03, Business, Commerce and Management Studies, publishes the following unit standards for public comment.

This notice contains the titles, fields, sub-fields, NQF levels, credits, and purposes of the qualifications, and the titles and specific outcomes of the unit standards upon which qualifications are based. The full qualifications and unit standards can be accessed via the SAQA web-site at www.saqa.co.za. Copies may also be obtained from the Directorate of Standards Setting and Development at the SAQA offices, 659 Pienaar street, Brooklyn, Pretoria.

Comment on the qualifications and unit standards should reach SAQA at the address **below** and no later than 19 December 2001. All correspondence should be marked Standards Setting – SGB for Project Management and addressed to

The Director: Standard Setting and Development SAQA

Attention: Mr. D Mphuthing
Postnet Suite 248
Private Bag X06
Waterkloof
0145

or faxed to 012 – 482 0907

SAMUEL B.A. ISAACS EXECUTIVE OFFICER

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



National Certificate in Project Management NQF 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies - NSB 03

Sub-field:

Project Management

Level:

1

Credit:

143

Issue date:

Review date:

Rationale of the qualification

This qualification reflects the needs of the project management sector, both now and in the future, for a general (not sector specific) skills pool.

This qualification is intended for a Project level that will include working as a leader in the context of a small project / sub-project involving few resources and having a limited impact on stakeholders and the environment or working as a contributing team member on a medium to large project when not a leader. Once having gained this competence they may continue into further project management competence and complexity or into management within an organisation or of their own organisation.

This qualification is intended for those with prior work experience or the NQF3 qualification in project management or an equivalent. The Learners accessing this standard will be working in or with project management teams or using a project approach. These projects may be technical projects, business projects or developmental projects and will cut across a range of economic sectors. This standard will also add value to learners who are running their own business and recognise that project management forms an integral component of any business

The prospective candidate for this qualification may be a person who is entering the work place or has been working in the workplace and has limited formal project management training / competence. Such a person may be working part time or full time with projects. They may be a team member or in a specialised support role such as Project Secretary, Project Administrator, procurement or cost support, planner - estimator support. For the specialist roles there will be a growth in competence gained with experience.

The learners may be from any sector, working in formal business, government, in the community or in rural areas. They may be working as supervisors of small projects or teams on a project, or they may be team members, providing administrative support or specialised procedure support such as procurement.

The qualification gives accessibility and flexibility to the learner and to the employed. The level of flexibility reflects the multiple job roles, organisational requirements and changing technological nature of the industry and at the same time it allows the individual to work towards a nationally recognised qualification.

Purpose of the qualification

The primary purpose of the qualification is to provide learners with:

- A foundation of basic project management skills which can be used to build further project management related competencies
- · Competence to be an effective project team member
- Competence to execute small, simple projects
- Competence to provide assistance to a project manager of large projects

Project level will include working as a leader in the context of a small project / sub-project involving few resources and having a limited impact on stakeholders and the environment or working as a contributing team member on a medium to large project when not a leader.

Access to the Qualification

Learners may access this qualification in terms of prior learning experiences, subject to the terms of the model decided upon by the relevant ETQA (which has still to be formed). Learners need familiarity with the English language such as speaking, reading and writing skills, since some of the learning material is not available in any other language. Computer literacy is also an advantage for practitioners and for self-learning opportunities.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against standards in project management practices or equivalent of NQF Level 3.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification a learner will be able to:

- Contribute and provide assistance to a project's scope, life cycle activities and the effective execution of the
 project plan by applying the correct range of project management tools and ensuring project work is carried
 out according to plan
- Support the implementation of the project plan in response to outcomes evaluated and assessed and provide related inputs to keep the project on track
- Perform administrative duties related to the project and documentation requirements and administer project meetings and workshops
- Contribute to project financial management issues related to cost budgets for an element of work
- Work with and support team project members working on the designated project
- Perform procurement duties related to the project undertaken

 Supervise a project team and implement a range of procedures and systems related to one of the following types of projects; developmental, technical or business

Unit standards will be utilised to provide depth of specification of the outcomes, ranges and the assessment criteria and processes.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The objectives, nature and outcomes of the project are identified and explained
- Project activities are identified, interpreted and applied in accordance with instructions and requirements
- Project progress is monitored, evaluated and corrective actions undertaken to ensure compatibility with plan
- Recommendations for improvement are identified and communicated to relevant parties
- Administrative procedures and processes are identified and explained and performed in accordance with time frames and instructions
- Cost budgets for an element of work are produced and recorded in the required format and within stipulated time frames
- Team building and enhancement principles and processes are explained and applied to individuals and groups within the project
- Procurement procedures and processes are identified and explained and performed in accordance with time frames and instructions
- A project team's performance is monitored, evaluated and problem areas identified and rectified to ensure project completion within scope and requirements

International comparability

Project Management is a discipline with globally recognised best practices and qualifications. This qualification and set of unit standards utilises international and local recognised best practice and standards in project management. The UK level NVQ 3 in Project Management has been referred to in development of the qualification.

This qualification will provide an entry point to further learning for NQF 5 and above qualifications and international qualifications, which are at that higher level.

International institutions that have been referenced include;

- Project Management Institute (Global)
- Association for Project Management (UK)
- International Project Management Association (Europe)
- Australian Institute for Project Management (Australia)

Integrated Assessment

Development of the competencies may be through a combination of informal and formal learning, self-learning, training programmes and work-based application. Providers should conduct diagnostic and formative assessment. Formative, continuous and diagnostic assessments should also take place in the work place. The learner should be able to assess him or herself and determine readiness for a summative assessment against this qualification.

The summative assessment should be undertaken under the direction of the appropriate ETQA.

Recognition of prior learning

Historically project management has been an 'accidental' profession. A large number of practitioners have experience but no formal underpinning knowledge. It is therefore essential to recognise prior learning and the application in the work place. The nature of project management means that competence is developed experientially, therefore the assessment processes will recognise experience versus theoretical knowledge. Portfolios of evidence will be important contributions to the assessment process.

Articulation possibilities

This qualification would be able to articulate with other qualifications in the sub-field, once they are registered as well as other qualifications (to be identified) in the field of Business, commerce and Management Studies

Moderation Options

The summative assessment will be directed through an ETQA. Professional Institutes, locally and internationally can also act as independent referees. Local institutes include PMISA and CEASA. Both have been active in the development of standards and qualifications and have strong working relations with the leading international project management institutes.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 4	Cr	Tota
Fundamental	Communication studies	20	1
Y	Physical, mathematical, computer and life sciences	16	
			36
Core	Contribute to project initiation, scope definition and scope change control	8	
	Identify, organise and co-ordinate project life cycle phases for control	5	
	purposes		
	Scheduling project activities to facilitate effective project execution	8	
	Estimate and prepare cost budgets for an element of work and monitor and	6	
	control actual cost against budget	7952 3	-
- * *** ***	Work as a project team member	8	
	Plan, organise and support project meetings and workshops	4	
	Conduct project documentation management to support project processes	6	S 00
81 - E	Implement project administration processes according to requirements	5	81
卷 沒	Apply a range of management tools	8	68
9	Contribute to the management of project risk within own technical expertise	5	
	Fulfil procurement activities and supervise procurement administration	8	ers _e
10 (2)	Monitor, evaluate and communicate project schedules	5	18
	Provide assistance in implementing and assuring project work is conducted	6	
2	in accordance with project quality plan	1.00	
	Identify, suggest and implement corrective actions to improve quality	6	
	Evaluate and improve the project team's performance	5	
			93
Elective	Supervise a project team of a developmental project to deliver project	14	
	objectives		ŶĬ.
e = =	Supervise a project team of a technical project to deliver project objectives	14	
30	Supervise a project team of a business project to deliver project objectives	14	
	Support the project environment and activities to deliver project objectives	14	
		-	14

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN PROJECT MANAGEMENT NQF 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core		
1.	Title:	Contribute to project initiation, scope definition and scope change control
2.	Title:	Identify, organise and co-ordinate project life cycle phases for control purposes
3.	Title:	Scheduling project activities to facilitate effective project execution
4.	Title:	Estimate and prepare cost budgets for an element of work and monitor and control
		actual cost against budget
5.	Title:	Work as a project team member
6.	Title:	Plan, organise and support project meetings and workshops
7.	Title:	Conduct project documentation management to support project processes
8.	Title:	Implement project administration processes according to requirements
9.	Title:	Apply a range of management tools
10.	Title:	Contribute to the management of project risk within own technical expertise
11.	Title:	Fulfil procurement activities and supervise procurement administration
12.	Title:	Monitor, evaluate and communicate project schedules
13.	Title:	Provide assistance in implementing and assuring project work is conducted in
	8	accordance with project quality plan
14.	Title:	Identify, suggest and implement corrective actions to improve quality
15.	Title:	Evaluate and improve the project team's performance
	-	
Electi	ive	
16.	Title:	Supervise a project team of a developmental project to deliver project objectives
		TO BE A TO SELECT THE SELECT SELECT THE SELECT SELE

16.	Title:	Supervise a project team of a developmental project to deliver project objectives
17.	Title:	Supervise a project team of a technical project to deliver project objectives
18.	Title:	Supervise a project team of a business project to deliver project objectives
19.	Title:	Support the project environment and activities to deliver project objectives

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN PROJECT MANAGEMENT NQF 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON	NQF LEVEL 4
1. Title: Contri	bute to a project initiation, scope definition and scope change control
Specific Outcome 1.1	Contribute to the identification, description and analysis of the project needs,
	expectations, constraints, assumptions, exclusions, inclusions and
	deliverables
Specific Outcome 1.2	Contribute to preparing and producing inputs to be used for further planning
	activities
Specific Outcome 1.3	Monitor the achievement of the project scope
2. Title: Identif	y, organise and co-ordinate project life cycle phases for control
purpos	ses
Specific Outcome 2.1	Discuss and explain the nature of the project
Specific Outcome 2.2	Identify the processes and sub-processes and select sub-processes
Specific Outcome 2.3	Co-ordinate the project processes and sub-processes over the various life
	cycle phases
3. Title: Sched	ule project activities to facilitate effective project execution
Specific Outcome 3.1	Identify, explain and describe the purpose and process of scheduling
Specific Outcome 3.2	Define and gather project activities from technical experts and within area of
	technical expertise
Specific Outcome 3.3	Sequence activities and estimate duration
Specific Outcome 3.4	Develop a project schedule
4. Title: Estima	te and prepare cost budgets for an element of work and monitor and
contro	l actual cost against budget
Specific Outcome 4.1	Identify elements and resources to be costed through interpreting the
	project scope statement, work breakdown structure and other project data
Specific Outcome 4.2	Prepare and produce a cost budget
Specific Outcome 4.3	Contribute to the monitoring and controlling of cost budget performance by
	maintaining records and communicating
u u	
5. Title: Work a	s a project team member
Specific Outcome 5.1	Demonstrate an understanding of criteria for working as a member of a
	team
Specific Outcome 5.2	Work autonomously and collaborate with other team members
Specific Outcome 5.3	Contribute to building relations between team members and stakeholders
Specific Outcome 5.4	Make a positive contribution to team coherence, image and spirit
Specific Outcome 5.5	Respect personal, ethical, religious and cultural differences to enhance
The same of the sa	interaction between team members

Specific Outcome 11.5

Title: Plan, organise and support project meetings and workshops Specific Outcome 6.1 Explain the purpose, objective and scope of project meetings and/ or workshops Plan for a project meeting/ workshop Specific Outcome 6.2 **Specific Outcome 6.3** Arrange and support a project meeting and/ or workshop Conduct project documentation management to support project processes 7. Title: Use a paper based and/ or electronic filing system for a project Specific Outcome 7.1 Specific Outcome 7.2 Use standards for identifying, securing and finding documentation Prepare and provide project templates to team members Specific Outcome 7.3 Prepare project documents for hand-over at the end of a project Specific Outcome 7.4 Describe and explain project documentation management process Specific Outcome 7.5 Implement project administration processes according to requirements Title: Implement processes and standards to support project change control and Specific Outcome 8.1 configuration management Update and communicate status of change requests Specific Outcome 8.2 Administer the project library/ repository to support change to affected items **Specific Outcome 8.3** Specific Outcome 8.4 Maintain project organisational information Apply a range of project management tools 9. Title: Specific Outcome 9.1 Demonstrate an understanding of project management tools Use a range of project management tools Specific Outcome 9.2 Contribute to the management of project risk within own technical expertise 10. Title: Identify and recognise potential risks that could affect project performance Specific Outcome 10.1 Contribute to the assessment of the impact and likelihood of identified risks Specific Outcome 10.2 Contribute to the development of risk management statements and plans Specific Outcome 10.3 Specific Outcome 10.4 Monitor and control the project risks Fulfil procurement activities and supervise procurement administration 11. Title: Compile and process procurement requests to required standards and Specific Outcome 11.1 needs Source suppliers to meet procurement requirements Specific Outcome 11.2 Receive and evaluate proposals and make supplier recommendations Specific Outcome 11.3 Supervise procurement administration Specific Outcome 11.4

Monitor supplier performance and build supplier relations

12. Monitor, evaluate and communicate project schedules Title: Specific Outcome 12.1 Identify and co-ordinate stakeholders, their roles, needs and expectations Specific Outcome 12.2 Describe and explain a range of project schedule control procedures and techniques Specific Outcome 12.3 Monitor and evaluate actual project work versus plan (baseline) Specific Outcome 12.4 Record and communicate schedule changes 13. Title: Provide assistance in implementing and assuring project work is conducted in accordance with project quality plan Specific Outcome 13.1 Discuss and explain need for process and standards to achieve quality Specific Outcome 13.2 Contribute to quality planning Specific Outcome 13.3 Monitor and evaluate the project quality plan's implementation Specific Outcome 13.4 Record quality deviations and expectations against project quality plan Specific Outcome 13.5 Prepare and distribute quality deviation reports Specific Outcome 13.6 Communicate and maintain central record of standards and procedures to be met on a project 14. Title: Identify, suggest and implement corrective actions to improve quality Specific Outcome 14.1 Identify and suggest corrective actions for improvement to project work Specific Outcome 14.2 Disseminate for corrective actions to appropriate individuals Specific Outcome 14.3 Implement corrective actions to improve quality of project work Evaluate and improve the project team's performance 15. Title: Specific Outcome 15.1 Explain and use a given tem performance reference framework (performance monitoring) Specific Outcome 15.2 Evaluate team performance using the given team performance framework Specific Outcome 15.3 Provide assessment of individuals and teams on an ongoing basis to agreed timeframes Specific Outcome 15.4 Facilitate team performance improvement using assessment findings **Electives** Title: Supervise a project team of a development project to deliver project objectives Specific Outcome 16.1 Discuss and explain the appropriateness of the various organisational structures Specific Outcome 16.2 Supervise and monitor a developmental project team Specific Outcome 16.3 Report progress on a developmental project Specific Outcome 16.4 Identify and rectify problems occurring in a developmental project Specific Outcome 16.5 Set up, run and close a developmental project

Supervise a project team of a technical project to deliver project objectives

Discuss and explain the appropriateness of the various organisational

Specific Outcome 17.1

structures Monitor a technical project team Specific Outcome 17.2 Report progress on a technical project Specific Outcome 17.3 Identify and rectify problems occurring in a technical project Specific Outcome 17.4 Set up, run and close a technical project Specific Outcome 17.5 Supervise a project team of a business project to deliver project objectives 18. Title: Discuss and explain the appropriateness of the various organisational Specific Outcome 18.1 structures Monitor a business project team Specific Outcome 18.2 Specific Outcome 18.3 Report progress on a business project Identify and rectify problems occurring in a business project Specific Outcome 18.4 Set up, run and close a business project Specific Outcome 18.5 Support the project environment and activities to deliver project objectives Discuss and explain the appropriateness of the various organisational Specific Outcome 19.1 Identify project types and nature and guiding on appropriate project Specific Outcome 19.2 strategies and tactics Suggest appropriate structures, methods and processes to projects Specific Outcome 19.3 Check and verify that a project environment is established Specific Outcome 19.4 Evaluate and consolidate from project experiences and update standard Specific Outcome 19.5

structures and processes

No. 1207

21 November 2001



SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY (SAQA)

In accordance with regulation 24(c) of the National Standards Bodies Regulations of 28 March 1998, the Standards Generating Body (SGB) for

Marketing

Registered by NSB 03, Business, Commerce and Management Studies, publishes the following unit standards for public comment.

This notice contains the titles, fields, sub-fields, NQF levels, credits, and purposes of the qualifications, and the titles and specific outcomes of the unit standards upon which qualifications are based. The full qualifications and unit standards can be accessed via the SAQA web-site at www.saqa.co.za. Copies may also be obtained from the Directorate of Standards Setting and Development at the SAQA offices, 659 Pienaar street, Brooklyn, Pretoria.

Comment on the qualifications and unit standards should reach SAQA at the address **below** and no later than 19 December 2001. All correspondence should be marked Standards Setting – SGB for Marketing and addressed to

The Director: Standard Setting and Development SAQA

Attention: Mr. D Mphuthing

Postnet Suite 248

Private Bag X06

Waterkloof

0145

or faxed to 012 - 482 0907

SAMUEL B.A. ISAACS EXECUTIVE OFFICER

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

4

Credit:

134

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Qualification in Marketing Research: Level 4 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who enter the field of Marketing Research. The whole marketing field per se is a key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner. The Marketing Research National Certificate at NQF Level 4 will provide a broad knowledge and skills needed in the industry and to progress along a career path for learners who

- Were previously disadvantaged or who were unable to complete their schooling and were therefore denied access to Further Education and Training.
- Have worked in Marketing Research for many years, but have no formal qualification in Marketing Research.
- Wish to extend their range of skills and knowledge of the industry so that they can become knowledge workers in Marketing Research.

The National Certificate in Marketing Research: Level 4 allows the learner to work towards a nationally recognised whole qualification. The qualification will allow both those in formal educations and those already employed in marketing organisations access, due to its flexibility. It aims to develop individuals who are informed and skilled in Marketing Research.

The qualification has building blocks that can be developed further and will lead to a more defined Marketing Research career path at NQF Level 5. It also focuses on the skills, knowledge, values and attitudes required to progress further. The intention is

- To promote the development of knowledge and skills that are required in all sub-sectors of marketing.
- To release the potential of people.
- To provide opportunities for people to move up the value chain.

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Field Interviewers
- Research Workers
- Research Executives
- Research Supervisors
- · Research Directors
- Research Agents

- Field Managers
- Research Academics
- Research Managers
- Research Clerks
- Research Administrators

The National Certificate in Marketing Research: Level 4 should produce knowledgeable, skilled Market Researchers who are able to contribute to improved productivity and efficiency within the marketing industry. It should provide the means for current individuals in the Marketing Research field to receive recognition of prior learning and to upgrade their skills and knowledge base. The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to give a broad understanding of marketing and the electives, which will allow for a specific competence in Marketing Research. It will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Any individuals who are or wish to be involved in Marketing Research will access this qualification. It also serves as the entry qualification into Marketing Research Qualifications in the higher band of learning. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 4. This qualification is also related to other qualifications such as the National Certificate in Marketing Communications, the National Certificate in Customer Management and the National Certificate in Marketing Management where all four of these qualifications will share fundamental competence as well as core competence. Portability across all four of these National Certificates is therefore ensured.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a "complete and whole" qualification, any learner who can provide guidance of the learning assumed to be in place, has open access to this qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence in communicating verbally and in writing and computer technology at Level 3 on the NQF or equivalent.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Work with other members of a marketing team to meet performance standards and objectives.
- Identify, assess, utilize and account for marketing expertise and resources in order to meet marketing objectives and report on results.
- Identify prospective customers and their needs and present the correct features, advantages and benefits to enable customers to make informed buying decisions.
- Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning, product life cycles, market segmentation, marketing mix and the competitive environment for products and services.
- Demonstrate an understanding for and comply with legislation, rules, activities and transactions.
- Identify and evaluate brand product and service promotional opportunities and co-ordinate and evaluate promotional activities and results.
- Comply with organisational ethics by applying marketing principles, concepts and culture through the identification of all stakeholders and their relationships.
- Liase with a range of customers ad identifying and solving customers complaints and problems.
- Identify, monitor and review marketing information and gather and process data for research and information purposes.
- Follow sampling requirements, attend briefings and meet research deadlines.
- Record, edit, code and capture marketing research data.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The importance of working together and communicating with all stakeholders in order to meet marketing requirements and objectives.
- Giving identified customers the correct information (features, advantages and benefits) to enable them to make informed buying decisions.
- The legal and ethical requirements in the marketing field.
- Product positioning, target markets and the competitive environment.
- Promotions which deal with either brand, product or service.
- The importance of knowing the internal and external stakeholders and believing in marketing as a profession.
- The methods, techniques and principles of dealing with customers and clients to meet their needs.
- Being able to source expertise and resources to assist with information gathering and processing.
- The correct selection of Marketing Research respondents.
- Using instructions and information to meet Marketing Research requirements.
- How to process research data to produce accurate research information.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this marketing research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- · For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Research industry, learners may also be able to enter careers in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Marketing Consultancy
- Marketing Management

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Research field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 4	Cr	Tota
Fundamental	Communicate verbally and in writing to a range of stakeholders	20	20
	Work with a range of software packages to generate, maintain and manipulate data	20	20
			40
Core	Work as a member of a marketing team	5	5
			is the second
	Meet marketing performance standards	4	4
er or to .	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives	4	4
50	Describe feature advantages and basefeet a		
N N	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	6	6
*	Identify customers of the business	4	4
*	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning	4	4
8 8 8	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications	4	4
	Deal with brand, product and service promotions	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment	4	4
*	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture	4	4
# # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	Comply with organisational ethics	4	4
	Identify internal and external stakeholders	4	4
	Liaise with a range of customers of a business	4	4
8	Handle a range of customer complaints	4	4
	Identify expertise and resources	3	3
S * 4	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data	.4	4
=1			70
Elective	Follow Sampling Requirements	9	9
9 18	Attend briefing and return work on deadline	7	7
	Record raw data	3	3
	Edit, code, and capture data	5	5
	The control of the second seco		24

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core

1.	Title	Work as a member of a marketing team	5.1
2.	Title	Meet marketing performance standards	E E
3.	Title	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives	
4.	Title	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	W
5.	Title	Identify customers of the business	38
6.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning	
7.	Title	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications	Sl
8.	Title	Deal with brand, product and service promotions	
9.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market	18
10.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment	
11.	Title	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture	2 0
12.	Title	Comply with organisational ethics	20
13.	Title	Identify internal and external stakeholders	
14.	Title	Liaise with a range of customers of a business	
15.	Title	Handle a range of customer complaints	
16.	Title	Identify expertise and resources	
17.	Title	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing	data

Elective

18.	Title	Follow Sampling Requirements
19.	Title	Attend briefing and return work on deadline
20.	Title	Record raw data
21	Title	Edit, code, and capture data

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

1. Title	il vy	Work as a member of a marketing team
Specific Outcome	1.1	Communicate with all relevant stakeholders to enhance teamwork
Specific Outcome	1.2	Report on team progress to appropriate authority and team
Specific Outcome	1.3	Display tendencies to work with others as a member of a marketing team
Specific Outcome	1.4	Handle and resolve areas of conflict .
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
2. Title	Sar also	Meet marketing performance standards
Specific Outcome	2.1	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing performance standards
Specific Outcome	2.2	Follow instructions to meet standards
Specific Outcome	2.3	Meet marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	2.4	Report on marketing objectives progress

3. Title		Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
Specific Outcome	3.1	Identify and assess marketing resources required
Specific Outcome	3.2	Utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
Specific Outcome	3.3	Account for marketing resources
	10	
4 		
4. Title		Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
Specific Outcome	4.1	Determine and communicate product features, advantages and benefits
Specific Outcome	4.2	Describe physical specifications, features, advantages and benefits
5. Title		Identify customers of the business
- 1145		identity dustomers of the business
Specific Outcome	5.1	Identify prospective customers and establish their needs
Specific Outcome	5.2	Establish and build the customer base
o =:::	#	
6. Title		Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
Specific Outcome	6.1	Describe and explain product positioning strategies
Specific Outcome	6.2	Position the product in relation to the market
Specific Outcome	6.3	Explain and describe product life cycles
7. Title		Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
Specific Outcome	7.1	Lipo and interest level decreased the decrease of the state of the sta
Opcome Outcome	7.1	Use and interpret legal documentation to ensure compliance with legal and organisational requirements
Specific Outcome	7.2	Comply with legislation and rules which regulate the conduct in a
	Rab ara si	marketing business
Specific Outcome	7.3	Apply the various aspects of marketing law and statutory requirements
		applicable to marketing transactions
	20	
8. Title		Deal with board and a second s
o. Title	179	Deal with brand, product, and service promotions
Specific Outcome	8.1	Evaluate brand, product and service promotion opportunities
Specific Outcome	8.2	Co-ordinate brand, product and sales promotions
Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate brand, product and service promotions
9. Title		Domonatrata an understanding of the toronto.
v. me.		Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
Specific Outcome	9.1	Describe market segmentation and market segmentation processes
Specific Outcome	9.2	Explain positioning strategies for chosen segments
Specific Outcome	9.3	Explain market segmentation in relation to the marketing mix
E1 (8)		

		E Company of the Comp
10. Title	e _w X	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
Specific Outcome	10.1	Explain the nature and the extent of the competitive environment
Specific Outcome	10.2	Retain the competitive environment of products or services
Specific Outcome	10.2	Trotain are composite or the control of the control
11. Title		Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
Specific Outcome	11.1	Identify and define what marketing is
Specific Outcome	11.2	Identify marketing principles and concepts
Specific Outcome	11.3	Identify the benefits of instilling in self a marketing culture
Specific outcome	11.4	Persuade others of the benefits of a marketing culture
Specific outcome	11.4	i disuado calolis di ale policine e a management
12. Title		Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
	22.2	
Specific Outcome	12.1	Describe the code of conduct and ethical issues Adhere to code of conduct
Specific Outcome	12.2	Identify and understand the ethical issues in the organisation
Specific Outcome	12.3	identity and dilderstand the ethical issues in the organisation
13. Title		Identify internal and external stakeholders
	(8)	6
Specific Outcome	13.1	Identify internal and external stakeholders
Specific Outcome	13.2	Describe the stakeholders' relationship to each other
Specific Outcome	13.3	Initiate contact with a range of customers
39		
14. Title		Liaise with a range of customers of a business
Specific Outcome	14.1	Initiate contact with a range of customers
Specific Outcome	14.2	Maintain contact with a range of customers
Specific Outcome	14.3	Administer contact with a range of customers
F		
15. Title	9	Handle a range of customer complaints
15. Tide		Training a range of datament complained
Specific Outcome	15.1	Identify the customers problem
Specific Outcome	15.2	Commit to solving the customer's problem
Specific Outcome	15.3	Arrange correct planning and solution to the customer's problem
Specific Outcome	15.4	Communicate with all stakeholders
Specific Outcome	15.5	Provide Practical business solutions
Ti 77	8	
16. Title		Identify expertise and resources
Specific Outcome	16.1	Determine criteria for expertise and resources
Specific Outcome	16.2	Establish and record expertise and resources
Specific Outcome	16.3	Report on expertise and resources
Specific Galactine		The state of the s

17. Title		Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	17.1 17.2 17.3	Identify marketing information flow needs Monitor and review marketing information flow Gather data for researching and information purposes
Specific Outcome	17.4	Process data for researching information purposes
18. Title		Follow sampling requirements
		and the same of th
Specific Outcome	18.1	Select respondents according to quota requirements
Specific Outcome	18.2	Select respondents according to probability sampling principles
Specific Outcome	18.3	Conduct a census
		* * *
19. Title		Attend briefing and return work on deadline
Specific outcome	19.1	Meet and adhere to deadlines
Specific Outcome	19.2	Attend briefing
Specific Outcome	19.3	Return work to recent parties
00		
20. Title	112	Record raw data
Specific Outcome	20.1	Conduct intensions and do briefing according to
Specific Outcome	20.1	Conduct interviews and de-briefing according to requirements Submit correct questionnaire
Specific Outcome	20.3	Transcribe qualitative information
		The same quantity anomalion
51 (4		
21. Title	3 4 17	Edit, code and capture data
Specific Outcome	21.1	Extract open-ended responses
Specific Outcome	21.2	Code correctly, neatly and accurately
Specific outcome	21.3	Edit accurately
Specific Outcome	21.4	Capture data

No. 1208

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

5

Credit:

243

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Diploma in Marketing Research: Level 5 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who are already involved in the field of Marketing Research or who enter the field at a higher level. Learners recognise that marketing is an essential and key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner.

This qualification also reflects the needs of the marketing sector both now and in the future: it gives accessibility and flexibility to the learner and to the employer. The level of flexibility is reflected in the multiple job roles and careers, organisational requirements and changing technological nature of marketing and at the same time it allows the individual to work towards a nationally recognised qualification

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Field Interviewers
- · Research Workers
- Research Executives
- Research Supervisors
- Research Directors
- Research Agents

- Field Managers
- Research Academics
- · Research Managers
- Research Clerks
- Research Administrators

The National Diploma in Marketing Research is structured in such a way that it exposes learners to a broad set of core competences while the electives allow for special competence in Marketing Research. It certainly promotes the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification will have demonstrated competence at NQF Level 4 in the area of Marketing Research or will have attained an equivalent qualification at that level. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 5 on the National Qualifications Framework and learners will have acquired a range of fundamental, core and elective competence around the areas of Marketing Strategy, Marketing Customer Relations, Principles of Marketing, Marketing Communications, Marketing Management, Marketing Research and Customer Management. Learners will have also demonstrated competence against specialised outcomes in the area of Marketing Research

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Certificate in Marketing, Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 4.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Conduct a marketing situational analysis while leading a team of Marketers and Service Providers.
- Develop, implement and manage a marketing related project and / or activity plan, and implement a generic marketing communications strategy.
- Present the features, advantages and benefits of products to customers so that a deal can be closed.
- Provide product training to others in the organisation and coach others on the principles of marketing in an organisation.
- Identify brand mix elements and financial implecations for decision making.

- Integrate marketing plans with the business process.
- Monitor and control the handling of customers, customer needs and requirements and areas of customer service impact.
- Analyse and interpret marketing information and present marketing data to stakeholders.
- Design and test samples of measuring instruments to meet objectives.
- Develop and write editing, coding and data processing and data analysis instructions.
- Plan, organize and control field staff and field work to meet the required objectives.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- Data gathering processes, it's analysis and the drawing of conclusions and making recommendations.
- How to get the best results from a team of marketers or service providers by monitoring and rectifying performance.
- Project plans and their successful conclusion.
- Communications models and strategies and the elements and processes.
- Customer needs and their identification to enable the production and demonstration of features, advantages and benefits.
- Training and coaching environment establishment and implementation.
- Product and service selling methods, techniques and principles.
- Brand influences and familiarity factors.
- Financial statement analysis and evaluation.
- Marketing activities and the issues, roles and characteristics that affect them.
- Customer service providers and their interaction to establish satisfied customers by interpreting and meeting customer needs and all areas that impact on customer service levels.
- Marketing data, it's analysis; interpretation and presentation to all stakeholders.
- Sampling methods and techniques and the measuring of gathered data.
- Editing, coding and processing of Marketing Research data.
- Field staff and field work and the overseeing of these to meet research objectives.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this marketing research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- · For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Research industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Marketing Consultancy
- Marketing Management

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center, Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Research field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

 Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.

Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be

accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.

 Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.

 Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the

integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 5	Сг	Total
Fundamental	Use a range of electronic media to sell an idea to a range of stakeholders	40	40
2 d 9	Present data based on sound information technology practices	40	40
			80
Core	Conduct a marketing situational analysis	5	5
	Lead a team of marketers and service providers	10	10
	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan	5	5
	Implement a generic communication strategy	10	10
	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer	10	10
	Provide product training to others in the organisation	10	10
# # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	Close a deal with a customer	5	5
	Identify brand mix elements	8	8
:s :	Identify financial implications for making decisions	8	4
	Integrate marketing plans with business process	6	6
	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation	5,	5
	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service	6	6
	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans	8	8
(42)	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact	6	6
70	Present data to stakeholders	5	5
	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information	8	8
			115
Elective	Design samples to represent the desired population	12	12
	Design a measuring instrument to gather the desired information	10	10
* 2 % 9 %	Write editing, coding and data processing instructions for the desired analysis	8	8
	Organise field staff to ensure the desired data is collected	8	8
a distribution of the state of	Plan fieldwork to meet required deadlines and budget	10	10

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Core

		700
1.	Title	Conduct a marketing situational analysis
2.	Title	l ead a team of marketers and service providers
3.	Title	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
	Title	Implement a generic communication strategy
4. 5.	Title	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
6.	Title	provide product training to others in the organisation
7.	Title	Close a deal with a customer
8.	Title	Identify brand mix elements
9.	Title	Identify financial implications for making decisions
10.	Title	Integrate marketing plans with business process
11.	Title	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
12.	Title	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
13.	Title	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action
13.	Hue	plans
44	T:46	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
14.	Title	Description of the state of the
15.	Title	Present data to stakeholders
16.	Title	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information

Elective

17.	Title	Design samples to represent the desired population
18.	Title	Design a measuring instrument to gather the desired information
19.	Title	Write editing, coding and data processing instructions for the
		desired analysis
20.	Title	Organise field staff to ensure the desired data is collected
21.	Title	Plan fieldwork to meet required deadlines and budget

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

1. Title		Conduct a marketing situational analysis
Specific Outcome	1.1	Gather data relating to project from the environment
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse data for the marketing situational analysis
Specific Outcome	1.3	Draw conclusion and make recommendations

2.	Title		Lead a team of marketers and service providers
Spec	ific Outcome	2.1	Set objectives for marketing team
	ific Outcome	2.2	Coach marketing staff to be able to achieve objectives
	ific Outcome	2.3	Monitor performance of marketing staff against targets
	ific Outcome	2.4	Provide feedback on performance
	ific Outcome	2.5	Take corrective action as needed
-,		2.0	Take corrective action as needed
3.	Title	£ 60	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
Spec	ific Outcome	3.1	Evaluate proposals and select preferred option
	ific Outcome	3.2	Conceptualise plan
	ific Outcome	3.3	Delegate tasks
	ific Outcome	3.4	Track project
		0.4	rrack project
4.	Title		Implement a near-in account of
7.	riuc	× 1	Implement a generic communication strategy
Speci	fic Outcome	. 41	Market and a 12
	fic Outcome	4.1 4.2	Identify and explain a generic communications model
opeci	iic Outcome	4.2	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
	9	9 %	
5.	Title	# #	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
Sneci	fic Outcome	E 4	Market
		5.1	Identify needs of the customer
	fic Outcome	5.2	Present features, advantages and benefits to the customer
Speci	fic Outcome	5.3	Demonstrate features, advantages and benefits
6	TEXAL	eus for a	
6.	Title		Provide product training to others in the organisation
0	F- 0 1		
Speci	fic Outcome	6.1	Establish an environment conducive to learning and development
0			needs
Specii	ic Outcome	6.2	Implement the product training activities
	A = 10		N S S
	100 O	*:	
7.	Title		Close a deal with a customer
	ic Outcome	7.1	Apply personal selling skills to sell products or services
Specif	ic Outcome	7.2	Apply closing techniques to sell products or services
	(#) Season (Was)		
8.	Title		Identify brand mix elements
100 A			Story in a company of the company of
	ic Outcome	8.1	Describe factors influencing branding
Specifi	c Outcome	8.2	Explain brand familiarity
			Control of the Contro

THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON OF T		
9. Title	20 E	Identify financial implications for making decisions
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	9.1 9.2	Evaluate financial statements against reporting requirements. Apply financial analysis tools to interpret and report on financial
Opcome Care		implications
	28	Integrate marketing plans with business process
10. Title	82	
Specific Outcome	10.1	Monitor the marketing environment and determine variables for marketing activities
Specific Outcome	10.2	Distinguish the role of marketing research and marketing information systems in investigating and understanding the operations of the market
Specific Outcome	10.3	place Distinguish characteristics of major markets
Specific Outcome	10.4	Identify influences on consumer behaviour in relation to marketing activities
11. Title		Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
Specific Outcome	11.1	Describe marketing principles and ethics to others
Specific Outcome	11.2	Develop and implement a coaching / mornioning pro-
Specific Outcome	11.3	n also and implement a monitoring programme
Specific Outcome	11.4	Monitor events of a "marketing culture" in the organisation
Secretary Control of the Control of		
12. Title	8	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
Specific Outcome	12.1	customer
Specific Outcome	34.2	Monitor the customer's satisfaction
Specific Outcome	34.3	
	*	Landament action
13. Title		Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
Specific Outcome	13.1	Listen to and interpret customer needs
Specific Outcome	13.2	Describe action plan
Specific Outcome	13.3	Implement action plan to meet customer's needs
Specific Outcome		
14. Title		Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
14. 1100		
Specific Outcome	14.	1 Identify "touch points" of customers
Specific Outcome		2 Determine solutions in areas of customer service
Specific Outcome		

		(5)	
	15. Title	e - 6	Present data to stakeholders
	Specific Outcome	15.1	Bendan II
	Specific Outcome	15.1	Land Line Annual of Adia to State Indicate
	16. Title		Analyse and interpret data and marketing information
	Specific Outcome	16.1	Analysis data and made the state of
	Specific Outcome	16.2	Analyse data and marketing information Interpret data and marketing information
	10.00	1	
	17. Title		Design samples to represent the desired population
	Specific Outcome	17.1	Select appropriate sampling method
19	Specific Outcome	17.2	Design the sample to meet budget and timing constraints
	Specific Outcome	17.3	Design the sample to meet analysis requirements
	Specific Outcome	17.4	Design sample size appropriate for the decisions being taken
	Specific Outcome	17.5	Construct sampling plan and instruction thereof
	5 0 0	22 10* - 23	
	18. Title		Design a measuring instrument to gather the desired information
	Specific Outcome	18.1	Decide upon question/discussion sequence (range: quantitative will
			apply to questionnaires and qualitative will apply to discussion guides)
	Specific Outcome	18.2	Decide upon the wording of the questions
	Specific Outcome	18.3	Ensure that the questions meet the analysis requirements
	Specific Outcome	18.4	Pilot/pre-test measuring instrument
	19. Title		Write editing, coding and data processing instructions for the
		ena et a	desired analysis
	Specific Outcome	19.1	Write editing and coding instructions
	Specific Outcome	19.2	Write the data processing / analysis instructions
			vinte the data processing / analysis instructions
-		90	
	20. Title		Organise field staff to ensure the desired data is collected
4	Specific Outcome	20.1	Conduct briefing with all relevant parties
	Specific Outcome	20.2	Train interviewers / moderators
	Specific Outcome	20.3	Oversee fieldwork
	Specific Outcome	20.4	Back check fieldwork
		Ž.	
	21. Title	ē	Plan fieldwork to meet required deadlines and budget
	Specific Outcome	21.1	Writing field instruction
		21.2	Selecting appropriate interviewers / moderators for the target
,	Specific Outcome	21.3	population and interview complexity Planning cost effective field schedules
	₹ _W		

No. 1209

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 6

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

6

Credit:

360

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rational of the qualification

The National First Degree in Marketing Research: Level 6 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Research their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Research offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National First Degree in Marketing Research will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Field Interviewers
- Research Workers
- Research Executives
- Research Supervisors
- · Research Directors
- Research Agents

- Field Managers
- Research Academics
- Research Managers
- Research Clerks
- Research Administrators

This qualification will help the learner at Level 6 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Research.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Research. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification would be operating in an advanced environment of Market Research and will be more involved in the development, enhancement and growth of Marketing Research Technologies and practice. Learners will be learning around areas of Strategy, Customer Relations and Marketing Principles. Learners will also be involved with core issues of Marketing Management, Customer Management and Marketing Communications but will be furthering their specialisation Marketing Research.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the Diploma Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 5.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Articulate a vision and develop a strategic plan to meet the vision.
- Monitor and review activity plans and the performance levels of marketers and service providers.
- Manage all aspects of a communications project and review its effectiveness.
- Assess the sales environment in order to present a range of products and services to meet objectives.
- Identify and manage innovation opportunities and processes.
- Determine, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions and elements.

- Integrate and promote marketing principles, including ethics policies throughout the organization. .
- Formulate, design, implement, service delivery systems and processes.
- Measure and analyse customer service delivery systems and processes.
- Identify, design, implements, measure and analyse customer service levels.
- Establish and determine research requirements and design and recommend a research brief.
- Analyse and interpret research in line with research requirements and communicate results.
- Identify, design and manage research projects to meet requirements.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The articulation of vision into strategic marketing objectives and strategies then monitoring activity plans to meet objectives.
- Performance criteria in terms of setting, collecting, comparing and providing feedback on performance.
- Marketing Communications projects, their identification, evaluation, selection, management and
- A range of products and services and their presentation in line with objectives and time frames.
- Innovation as an important part of marketing and its successful implementation in an organisation.
- Brand mix and the role viables and brand mix decision have on outcomes.
- Marketing principles and ethics and the importance of promoting and integrating these into marketing policy.
- Customer service levels, measurement and analysis and the design and implementation of customer service delivery systems.
- Research requirement, their establishment and systems and the design of a research brief.
- Research requirements are analyses and data collected, processed and communicated to relevant parties.
- Research projects are designed and managed to meet the requirements of the research brief.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- **New Zealand Qualifications**
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- **IMM Qualifications**

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- · For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Research industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Marketing Consultancy
- Marketing Management

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Research field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 6	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a strategy using creative means to a range of stakeholders	60	60
	Interpret historical data and present a range of formula to influence decision making	60	60 60
	to little decision making		120
Core	Develop a strategic plan	15	15
Core	Monitor and review activity plan	7	7
	mother did tollow dealing plant		1
is N	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers	10	10
	Manage a communications projects	15	15
	Present a range of products or services	15	15
	Identify innovation opportunities	15	15
e a a	Integrate brand mix elements	15	15
	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations	8	8
20 to 20	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	6	6
E 9	Measure and analyse customer service level	12	12
2 EN 2	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes	8	8
	Conceptualise and research requirements	10	10
	Design a research brief	10	10
2			146
Elective	Analyse and interpret research in line with research requirements and communicate results	32	32
	Design research projects that meets the requirements of	32	32
6(the brief	30	30
e	Manage research project		i i
<u> </u>			96

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

Core

1.	Title	Develop a strategic plan
2.	Title	Monitor and review activity plan
3.	Title	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
4.	Title	Manage a communications projects
4. 5.	Title	Present a range of products or services
6.	Title	Identify innovation opportunities
7.	Title	Integrate brand mix elements
8.	Title	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
9.	Title	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
10.	Title	Measure and analyse customer service level
11.	Title	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
12.	Title	Conceptualise and research requirements
13.	Title	Design a research brief
	+0	

Elective

14.	Title	Analyse and interpret research in line with research requirements a communicate results	and
15.	Title	Design research projects that meets the requirements of the brief	
16.	Title	Manage research project	194

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

1. Intle		Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and competitor environments
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

	2. Title		Monitor and review activity plan
	Specific Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
	Specific Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results
	Specific Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances
	Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
		2.5	Made recommendations
	Specific Outcome	2.5	Wade recommendations
	12 NO	30	
	3. Title	11 94	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
	0		Annual Carlos
	Specific Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
	Specific Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data
ě	Specific Outcome	3.3	Compare actual to standard
	Specific Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
	50 G		
	4. Title	#3 #3	Manage a communications projects
	Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and format
	Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
	Specific Outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness
	5. Title		Present a range of products or services
	Specific Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
		5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment
	Specific Outcome		
	Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
	본 전 25 10		
	6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities
*	o. Thio		
	Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
			within an organisation
	Specific Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
		.n 4 1944	
	7. Title		Integrate brand mix elements
	Specific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix
			Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
	Specific Outcome	7.2	Committe, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
	8. Title		Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
	Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
			culture
	Specific Outcome	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture
	Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme
		39	

	9. Title	.70	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
	Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing programme
	Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices
	Specific Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices
		48	
	10. Title		Measure and analyse customer service level
	Specific Outcome	10.1	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
	Specific Outcome	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of customer service
	Specific Outcome	10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes and collect data
	Specific Outcome	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
		2	
	11. Title	2	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
	8 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	e H _e e	and proceeds
	Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired service levels
	Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
	<u> </u>	F 10	
	12. Title	38	Conceptualise and research requirements
	Specific Outcome	12.1	Establish research requirements
	Specific Outcome	12.2	Determine research requirement systems
		E 81	· ·
	13. Title		Design a research brief
	Specific Outcome	13.1	Assess and recommend a research brief
	Specific Outcome	13.2	Design a research brief to optimise results.
	14. Title	8 8 8	Analyse and interpret research in line with research requirements and communicate results
÷	Specific Outcome	14.4	Conduct relevant analyses
	Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	14.1 14.2	Conduct relevant analyses. Collate pertinent information from data.
	Specific Outcome	14.3	Transform information into knowledge.
	Specific Outcome	14.3	Draw conclusion from research results.
	Specific Outcome	14.5	Communicate data, information and conclusions to end-user.
	openiic Outcome	14.0	Communicate data, information and conclusions to end-user.

	15. Title	12 28 (4)	Design research projects that meets	the	req	uire	men	ts c	of the	e brie	ef.
	Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	15.1 15.2	Identify information needs. Design appropriate sample.								٠
	Specific Outcome	15.3	Design appropriate data collection to	ol.	31						
	Specific Outcome	15.4	Identify available sources of informat	ion.				63			
4	Specific Outcome	15.5	Draw up project plan / proposal.								8
	16. Title		Manage research project.			50				48	
	Specific Outcome	16.1	Manage fieldwork.	0			12 11		S	± ±	
	Specific Outcome	16.2	Manage data processing.							4	4
	Specific Outcome	16.3	Manage data capture.	10					23		
	S-01		1,—/								

No. 1210

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 7

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

7

Credit:

484

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Second Degree in Marketing Research: Level 7 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Research their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Research offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National Second Degree in Marketing Research will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Field Interviewers
- Research Workers
- Research Executives
- Research Supervisors
- Research Directors
- Research Agents

- Field Managers
- Research Academics
- Research Managers
- Research Clerks
- Research Administrators

This qualification will help the learner at Level 7 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Research.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Research. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

This higher degree will allow learners to operate at a strategic and conceptual level in designing and strategising new technologies, methodologies and techniques of furthering the purposes and benefits of Marketing Research.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Degree - Marketing Research or equivalent NQF 6.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Analyse and evaluate global trends and develop a vision for an organization.
- Develop a monitoring system and evaluate and monitor a strategic marketing plan.
- Monitor and control all aspects of an internal or external marketing unit.
- Interpret a brief and develop a public relations and marketing campaign.
- Develop, plan and review alternative marketing opportunities.
- Assess current marketing culture and set marketing culture and ethics objectives to instill a marketing culture and ethics in all stakeholder groups.
- Create and maintain a positive culture of customer service in the supply chain and conceptualise innovative customer service strategies.

- Develop, assess and write research policies and sponsor research activities for market research projects.
- Develop and integrate all aspects of marketing research programmes and manage specialized areas in marketing research to meet corporate business objectives.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The overall process for developing an organisation vision.
- The strategic marketing plans development and evaluation.
- The process for starting and structuring a marketing unit and the application of financial plans and controls.
- Public relations and marketing campaigns are defined and interpreted strategies developed to meet requirements.
- The involvement of all stakeholders to develop alternative opportunities.
- · Marketing culture establishment in all stakeholder groups.
- Marketing best practice ethics are established, set and implemented within given resource constraints.
- Customer service culture is developed and innovative systems conceptualised to meet objectives.
- Research projects are identified, sponsored and monitored.
- Research policies are developed, agreed and recommended and assist organisation to meet its
 objectives.
- Research techniques, processes and products are developed and integrated to meet corporate business objectives.
- Specialised marketing research situations are managed.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- · NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- · For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Research industry, learners may also be able to carry out careers in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Marketing Consultancy
- Marketing Management

Note:

- The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center, Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc.

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Research field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

 Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.

· Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be

accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.

Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to
the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements
reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and
in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.

Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the

integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

• ve a section at	Level 7	Сг	Total
Fundamental	Present a national strategy benchmarked to add value internationally	70	70
in Faller 1	Establish scenarios of best practice	70	70 60
Core			140
Core	Develop a vision for an organisation	20	20
	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan	20	20
	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)	60	60
	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign	20	20
	Generate alternative opportunities	10	10
	Instill Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups	8	8
	Set Marketing Ethics Policy	8	8
	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain	20	20
	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies	30	30
	Sponsor research projects	10	10
	Set research policy	10	10
		,	216
lective	Develop and integrate all aspects of the research programme to meet the corporate business objectives	90	90
	Manage specialised areas in marketing research	40	40:
			130

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONALSECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

Core

1.	Title	Develop a vision for an organisation
2.	Title	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan
3.	Title	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)
4.	Title	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign
5.	Title	Generate alternative opportunities
6.	Title	Instill Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups
7.	Title	Set Marketing Ethics Policy
8.	Title	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain
9.	Title	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies
10.	Title	Sponsor research projects
11.	Title	Set research policy

Elective

12.	Title	Develop and integrate all aspects of the research programme to meet the corporate business objectives
13.	Title	Manage specialised areas in marketing research

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING RESEARCH NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

1. Title	e to	Develop a strategic plan.	
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context	
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and competitor environments	
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives	
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies	
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy	Ü
2. Title		Monitor and review activity plan	
Specific Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans	
Specific Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results	
Specific Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances	
Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options	32
Specific Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations	

3. Title	69	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
Specific Outcome	e 3.1	Set performance criteria
Specific Outcome	e 3.2	Collect relevant data
Specific Outcome		Compare actual to standard
Specific Outcome		Cive feedback to medicate
Specific Odicome	3 3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
9)		
4. Title		Manage a communications projects
		* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and
		format
Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
Specific Outcome		Review the communications project effectiveness
-posine outcome	70	Noview the communications project enectiveness
	(i)	e a
5. Title	70	
o. True		Present a range of products or services
0	122 (2)	
Specific Outcome		Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
Specific Outcome		Assess the internal and external sales environment
Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
		2
	93 27	
6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities
1140		identity innovation opportunities
Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and evening processes and matter to the state of
opcomo outcome	0.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
Specific Outcome	0.0	within an organisation
Specific Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
	- 2	
-		
7. Title		Integrate brand mix elements
Was the second s		
Specific Outcome		Determine variables of the brand mix
Specific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
		The manual branks thin decisions
		era a la
8. Title		Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
		Torriote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and development of
opecine outcome	0.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
One side Out		culture
Specific Outcome		Implement programme to achieve desired culture
Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme
		* 8 500 *
V.200 (1990)		
9. Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
		an a con x 1800000000000000000000000000000000000
Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing
£ 8 8		programme
Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices
Specific Outcome		Correct unothing traction and the
Specific Outcome	5 .3	Correct unethical marketing practices

10. Title	Measure and analyse customer service level
Specific Outcome 10.1	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
Specific Outcome 10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of customer service
Specific Outcome 10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes and collect data
Specific Outcome 10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
11. Title	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
A Section of	
Specific Outcome 11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired service levels
Specific Outcome 11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
12. Title	Develop and integrate all aspects of the research programme to meet the corporate business objectives
60	
Specific Outcome 12.1	Develop/adapt research techniques, processes and products to add Value to research programmes
Specific Outcome 12.2	Integrate elements of the research process in line with corporate business objectives
Specific Outcome 12.3	Integrate research information into strategic recommendations to meet corporate business objectives
Specific Outcome 12.4	Adapt international standard practice to be relevant within the SA
Specific Outcome 12.5	Guide and educate clients on what Market Research can or cannot do for them
e e e	40 10. 310
13. Title	Manage specialised areas in marketing research
Specific Outcome 13.1	Manage consumer marketing management
Specific Outcome 13.2	Manage husiness-to-business marketing management
Specific Outcome 13.3	Manage marketing management for non-profit organisations
Specific Outcome 13.4	Manage marketing management for service industry

No. 1211

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

4

Credit:

134

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Qualification in Marketing Management: Level 4 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who enter the field of Marketing Management. The whole marketing field per se is a key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner. The Marketing Management National Certificate at NQF Level 4 will provide a broad knowledge and skills needed in the industry and to progress along a career path for learners who

- Were previously disadvantaged or who were unable to complete their schooling and were therefore denied access to Further Education and Training.
- Have worked in Marketing Management for many years, but have no formal qualification in Marketing Management.
- Wish to extend their range of skills and knowledge of the industry so that they can become knowledge workers in Marketing Management.

The National Certificate in Marketing Management: Level 4 allows the learner to work towards a nationally recognised whole qualification. The qualification will allow both those in formal educations and those already employed in marketing organisations access, due to its flexibility. It aims to develop individuals who are informed and skilled in Marketing Management.

The qualification has building blocks that can be developed further and will lead to a more defined Marketing Management career path at NQF Level 5. It also focuses on the skills, knowledge, values and attitudes required to progress further. The intention is

- To promote the development of knowledge and skills that are required in all sub-sectors of marketing.
- To release the potential of people.
- To provide opportunities for people to move up the value chain.

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Marketing Managers
- Brand Managers
- Brand Assistants
- Category Managers

- Marketing Directors
- Marketing Assistants
- Product Managers

The National Certificate in Marketing Management: Level 4 should produce knowledgeable, skilled Marketing Managers who are able to contribute to improved productivity and efficiency within the marketing industry. It should provide the means for current individuals in the Marketing Management field to receive recognition of prior learning and to upgrade their skills and knowledge base. The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to give a broad understanding of marketing and the electives, which will allow for a specific competence in Marketing Management. It will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Any individuals who are or wish to be involved in Marketing Management will access this qualification. It also serves as the entry qualification into Marketing Management Qualifications in the higher band of learning. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 4. This qualification is also related to other qualifications such as the National Certificate in Customer Management, the National Certificate in Market Research and the National Certificate in Marketing Communications where all four of these qualifications will share fundamental competence as well as core competence. Portability across all four of these National Certificates are therefore ensured.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a "complete and whole" qualification, any learner who can provide guidance of the learning assumed to be in place, has open access to this qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence in communicating verbally and in writing and computer technology at Level 3 on the NQF or equivalent.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Work with other members of a marketing team to meet performance standards and objectives.
- Identify, assess, utilize and account for marketing expertise and resources in order to meet marketing objectives and report on results.
- Identify prospective customers and their needs and present the correct features, advantages and benefits to enable customers to make informed buying decisions.
- Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning, product life cycles, market segmentation, marketing mix and the competitive environment for products and services.
- Demonstrate an understanding for and comply with legislation, rules, activities and transactions.
- Identify and evaluate brand product and service promotional opportunities and co-ordinate and evaluate promotional activities and results.
- Comply with organisational ethics by applying marketing principles, concepts and culture through the identification of all stakeholders and their relationships.
- Liase with a range of customers ad identifying and solving customers complaints and problems.
- Identify, monitor and review marketing information and gather and process data for research and information purposes.
- Implement and track financial issues pertaining to marketing and monitor competitor activities while maintaining brand and corporate identify.
- Maintain communication and relationships with all stakeholders.
- Manage Marketing activity plans to meet agreed deadlines.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The importance of working together and communicating with all stakeholders in order to meet marketing requirements and objectives.
- Giving identified customers the correct information (features, advantages and benefits) to enable them to make informed buying decisions.
- The legal and ethical requirements in the marketing field.
- Product positioning, target markets and the competitive environment.
- Promotions which deal with either brand, product or service.
- The importance of knowing the internal and external stakeholders and believing in marketing as a profession.
- The methods, techniques and principles of dealing with customers and clients to meet their needs.
- Being able to source expertise and resources to assist with information gathering and processing.
- What financial issues to track to ensure success in meeting marketing needs and requirements.
- How to measure and track critical success factors, key brand indicators and competitor activities.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this marketing research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Management industry, learners may also be able to enter careers in

- Brand Management
- Product Management
- Marketing Communications
- Marketing Research
- Customer Management
- Sales
- Customer Service
- Direct marketing
- General Marketing
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Advertising
- Promotions
- Public Relations

Advisor Advisor to a graph of business of the

的复数医性性性 医乳腺素 医皮肤 医皮肤

Michaeley (Baseders Germann May Granders

MONTHER CHAPT

Sankenhier in it there is als

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing,
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 4	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Communicate verbally and in writing to a range of stakeholders	20	20
	Work with a range of software packages to generate, maintain and manipulate data	20	20
			40
ore	Work as a member of a marketing team	5	5
	Meet marketing performance standards	4	4
*	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives	4	4
8	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	6	6
W. W.	Identify customers of the business	4	4
E 0 1	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning	4	4
	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications	4	4
	Deal with brand, product and service promotions	4	4
5 N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment	4	4
20.2	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture	4	4
	Comply with organisational ethics	4	4 ,
*(Bas 454 35) MW	Identify internal and external stakeholders	4	4
	Liaise with a range of customers of a business	4	4
	Handle a range of customer complaints	4	4
er Kannak proper francosyste (kinder ere	Identify expertise and resources	3	3
	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data	4	4 70
Elective	Carry out marketing administration within agreed parameters	10	10
	Implement activity plans meeting agreed deadlines	14	14
The second of th			24

earteige af in the second

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core

1.	Title	Work as a member of a marketing team
2.	Title	Meet marketing performance standards
3.	Title	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
4.	Title	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
5.	Title	Identify customers of the business
6.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
7.	Title	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
8.	Title	Deal with brand, product and service promotions
9.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
10.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
11.	Title	Instil in myself a personal marketing culture
12.	Title	Comply with organisational ethics
13.	Title	Identify internal and external stakeholders
14.	Title	Liaise with a range of customers of a business
15.	Title	Handle a range of customer complaints
16.	Title	Identify expertise and resources
17.	Title	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data

18.	Title	Carry out marketing administration within agreed parameters
19.	Title	Implement activity plans meeting agreed deadlines

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

1. Title	¥	Work as a member of a marketing team
Specific Outcome	1.1	Communicate with all relevant stakeholders to enhance teamwork
Specific Outcome	1.2	Report on team progress to appropriate authority and team
Specific Outcome	1.3	Display tendencies to work with others as a member of a marketing team
Specific Outcome	1.4	Handle and resolve areas of conflict
	# #	
2. Title		Meet marketing performance standards
Specific Outcome	2.1	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing performance standards
Specific Outcome	2.2	Follow instructions to meet standards
Specific Outcome	2.3	Meet marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	2.4	Report on marketing objectives progress
4 200		

34	77 N		
3.	Title	*	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
Chacifi	c Outcome	3.1	Identify and assess marketing resources required
		3.2	Utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
	c Outcome		Account for marketing resources
Specific	c Outcome	3.3	Account for marketing resources
	1		
			of a range of products
4.	Title	1	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
	Q #1	161 YESTON	
Specifi	c Outcome	4.1	Determine and communicate product features, advantages and benefits
	c Outcome	4.2	Describe physical specifications, features, advantages and benefits
opcom	o outoomo	e San	
			B a b
_	7741-	4 4	Identify customers of the business
5.	Title		Identity dustomers of the business
	0.158205.00	2022 202	
	c Outcome	5.1	Identify prospective customers and establish their needs
Specifi	c Outcome	5.2	Establish and build the customer base
100 1 00			
		## III	
6.	Title		Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
0.	1100		
0	- 0.4	6.1	Describe and explain product positioning strategies
	c Outcome		Position the product in relation to the market
	ic Outcome	6.2	Position the product in relation to the market
Specifi	ic Outcome	6.3	Explain and describe product life cycles
			A STATE OF THE STA
		Y = 3	
7.	Title	4	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
MESS		8	
Coocif	ic Outcome	7.1	Use and interpret legal documentation to ensure compliance with legal
Shecii	ic Outcome		and organisational requirements
		70	Comply with legislation and rules which regulate the conduct in a
Specif	ic Outcome	7.2	Comply with regislation and rules which regulate and the
		3.0	marketing business
Specif	ic Outcome	7.3	Apply the various aspects of marketing law and statutory requirements
		2000	applicable to marketing transactions
		11 1 Edward 1	Atv 4 a tale
8.	Title		Deal with brand, product, and service promotions
Ο.	1100	7	
0	= Otaama	8.1	Evaluate brand, product and service promotion opportunities
	ic Outcome		Co-ordinate brand, product and sales promotions
	ic Outcome		Evaluate brand, product and service promotions
Specif	ic Outcome	8.3	Evaluate brand, product and service promotions
		57	
9.	Title		Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
	- Victory Supports		The same of the sa
Specif	fic Outcome	9.1	Describe market segmentation and market segmentation
Opeon	io calconio		processes
	E- 0-4	0.0	Explain positioning strategies for chosen segments
	fic Outcome		Explain positioning strategies for chosen agginstic
Specif	fic Outcome	9.3	Explain market segmentation in relation to the marketing mix
120			

		-	
10.	Title		Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
Spe	cific Outcome	10.1	Explain the nature and the extent of the competitive environment
Spec	cific Outcome	10.2	
38	1.7		Retain the competitive environment of products or services
3		15 83	
11.	Title	,	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
	cific Outcome	11.1	Identify and define what marketing is
	cific Outcome	11.2	Identify marketing principles and concepts
	ific Outcome	11.3	Identify the benefits of instilling in self a marketing culture
Spec	ific outcome	11.4	Persuade others of the benefits of a marketing culture
- 4			on a maintaing culture
20			
12.	Title	per la	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
Spec	ific Outcome	12.1	Describe the code of conduct and ethical issues
	ific Outcome	12.2	Adhere to code of conduct
	ific Outcome	12.3	Identify and understand the ethical issues in the organisation
			and anastration are extincal issues in the organisation
40	T		
13.	Title		Identify internal and external stakeholders
Spec	ific Outcome	13.1	Identify internal and external stakeholders
	ific Outcome	13.2	Describe the stakeholders' relationship to each other
	ific Outcome	13.3	Initiate contact with a range of customers
e jest.	a a pay 12 ji a	p ⁶⁰⁰ = 6	
14.	Title		Florar vote:
W.	1100 - 1-11-11-11		Liaise with a range of customers of a business
Speci	fic Outcome	14.1	Initiate contact with a range of customers
	fic Outcome	14.2	Maintain contact with a range of customers
Speci	fic Outcome	14.3	Administer contact with a range of customers
	N p a FAN	0	Tallige of Custoffiels
15.	Title	27	Handle a range of customer complaints
Specif	fic Outcome	15.1	Danie a
Speci	fic Outcome	15.2	Identify the customers problem
Specif	fic Outcome		Commit to solving the customer's problem
Specif	fic Outcome	15.3	Arrange correct planning and solution to the customer's problem
	fic Outcome	15.4	Communicate with all stakeholders
Opecii	ic Outcome	15.5	Provide Practical business solutions
16.	Title	× ,	Identify expertise and resources
1 <u>25</u> 17 1500		19 19 SW W 17	, and resources
	ic Outcome	16.1	Determine criteria for expertise and resources
	ic Outcome	16.2	Establish and record expertise and resources
Specif	ic Outcome	16.3	Report on expertise and resources

17. Title		Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data
Specific Outcome	17.1	Identify marketing information flow needs
Specific Outcome	17.2	Monitor and review marketing information flow
Specific Outcome	17.3	Gather data for researching and information purposes
Specific Outcome	17.4	Process data for researching information purposes
18. Title		Follow sampling requirements
Specific Outcome	18.1	Track budgets in accordance with marketing needs
Specific Outcome	18.2	Monitor critical success factors and key indicators of brand
Specific Outcome	18.3	Track pricing
Specific Outcome	18.4	Monitor competitors activities
Specific Outcome	18.5	Maintain brand and corporate identity materials
19. Title		Implement marketing activity plans to meet agreed deadlines
Specific outcome	19.1	Communicate with internal and external stakeholders
Specific Outcome	19.2	Maintain relationship with providers
Specific Outcome	19.3	Manage and monitor marketing activity plans
Specific Outcome	19.4	Evaluate completed marketing activities

No. 1212

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

5

Credit:

243

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Diploma in Marketing Management: Level 5 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who are already involved in the field of Marketing Management or who enter the field at a higher level. Learners recognise that marketing is an essential and key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner.

This qualification also reflects the needs of the marketing sector both now and in the future: it gives accessibility and flexibility to the learner and to the employer. The level of flexibility is reflected in the multiple job roles and careers, organisational requirements and changing technological nature of marketing and at the same time it allows the individual to work towards a nationally recognised qualification

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Marketing Managers
- Brand Managers
- Brand Assistants
- Category Managers

- Marketing Directors
- Marketing Assistants
- Product Managers

The National Diploma in Marketing Management is structured in such a way that it exposes learners to a broad set of core competences while the electives allow for special competence in Marketing Management. It certainly promotes the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification will have demonstrated competence at NQF Level 4 in the area of Marketing Management or will have attained an equivalent qualification at that level. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 5 on the National Qualification Framework and learners will have acquired a range of fundamental, core and elective competence around the areas of Marketing Strategy, Marketing Customer Relations, Principles of Marketing, Marketing Communications, Marketing Management, Marketing Research and Customer Management. Learners will have also demonstrated competence against specialised outcomes in the area of Marketing Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Certificate in Marketing, Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 4.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Conduct a marketing situational analysis while leading a team of Marketers and Service Providers.
- Develop, implement and manage a marketing related project and / or activity plan, and implement
 a generic marketing communications strategy.
- Present the features, advantages and benefits of products to customers so that a deal can be closed.
- Provide product training to others in the organisation and coach others on the principles of marketing in an organisation.
- Identify brand mix elements and financial implecations for decision making.
- Integrate marketing plans with the business process.
- Monitor and control the handling of customers, customer needs and requirements and areas of customer service impact.
- Analyse and interpret marketing information and present marketing data to stakeholders.
- Identify, implement and manage marketing strategies and plans to meet organizational requirements.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- Data gathering processes, it's analysis and the drawing of conclusions and making recommendations.
- How to get the best results from a team of marketers or service providers by monitoring and rectifying performance.
- Project plans and their successful conclusion.
- Communications models and strategies and the elements and processes.
- Customer needs and their identification to enable the production and demonstration of features, advantages and benefits.
- Training and coaching environment establishment and implementation.
- Product and service selling methods, techniques and principles.
- · Brand influences and familiarity factors.
- · Financial statement analysis and evaluation.
- Marketing activities and the issues, roles and characteristics that affect them.
- Customer service providers and their interaction to establish satisfied customers by interpreting and meeting customer needs and all areas that impact on customer service levels.
- Marketing data, it's analysis; interpretation and presentation to all stakeholders.
- Marketing strategies and marketing plans and the development and implementation.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

o di Pinggia Paraman di Talahang Karaman Albahan d

NO WORKS CONTINUED INCOMES THE SHOW OF SHIPS AND A SECOND SHOW OF SHIPS AND A SECOND SHIP

takana di katan Teknat katanan luar tendakan dalam dalam Jalenot

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications Qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- · For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Management industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- Brand Management
- Product Management
- Marketing Communications
- Marketing Research
- Customer Management
- Sales
- Customer Service
- Direct marketing
- General Marketing
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Advertising
- Promotions
- Public Relations

Note:

1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing

 In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc.

Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to
 the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements
 reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and
 in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

of the anti-destruction of account weight charters that he

To its souther or one a galese, the engage dee, the consent on the experience of concient of the consent of paradia god attached the consent of the obtained as belowed.

Production of the production of the second

Tent planter seems and received the control of the

t i de la compania d La compania de compania de la compania del compania de la compania de la compania de la compania de la compania del compania d

an de Constanti

	Level 5	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Use a range of electronic media to sell an idea to a range of stakeholders	40	40
额	Present data based on sound information technology practices	40	40
The state of the s			80
Core	Conduct a marketing situational analysis	5	5
	Lead a team of marketers and service providers	10	10
e s s final n	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan	5	5
es de	Implement a generic communication strategy	10	10
	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer	10	10
55 std 90 = 2	Provide product training to others in the organisation	10	10
	Close a deal with a customer	5	5
(2)	Identify brand mix elements	8	8 -
* 85	identify financial implications for making decisions	8	4
W W	Integrate marketing plans with business process	6	6
2	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation	5	5
version of the second	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service	6	6
1971年11日本第二年11日本 1881年 - 1881年 - 1881	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans	8	8
E (2.1.4)	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact	6	6
v	Present data to stakeholders	5	5
	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information	8	-8
And the state of t			115
Elective	Develop marketing strategies in line with portfolio strategy	28	28
ab againgmist	Develop and implement marketing plan in line with	20	20
			48

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Core

1.	Title	Conduct a marketing situational analysis
2.	Title	Lead a team of marketers and service providers
3.	Title	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
4.	Title	Implement a generic communication strategy
5.	Title	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
6.	Title	provide product training to others in the organisation
7.	Title	Close a deal with a customer
8.	Title	Identify brand mix elements
9.	Title	Identify financial implications for making decisions
10.	Title	Integrate marketing plans with business process
11.	Title	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
12.	Title	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
13.	Title	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
14.	Title	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
15.	Title	Present data to stakeholders
16.	Title	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information

Elective

17.	Title	Develop marketing strategies in line with portfolio strategy
18.	Title	Develop and implement marketing plan in line with marketing strategy

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

	i. Hige		Conduct a marketing situational analysis
S. Contract	Specific Outcome	1.1	Gather data relating to project from the environment
2000	Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse data for the marketing situational analysis
	Specific Outcome	1.3	Draw conclusion and make recommendations
E.	- ·	# # # #	
	2. Title		Lead a team of marketers and service providers
	Specific Outcome	2.1	Set objectives for marketing team
	Specific Outcome	2.2	Coach marketing staff to be able to achieve objectives
	Specific Outcome	2.3	Monitor performance of marketing staff against targets
	Specific Outcome	2.4	Provide feedback on performance
	Specific Outcome	2.5	Take corrective action as needed

		Title		Develop implement and manage a project / activity plan
	3.	Title		Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
	Specifi	c Outcome c Outcome	3.1 3.2	Evaluate proposals and select preferred option Conceptualise plan
		c Outcome	3.3	Delegate tasks
	Specifi	c Outcome	3.4	Track project
500				
	627 8			Invalence to accord communication strategy
	4.	Title		Implement a generic communication strategy
	0	- 0.4	4.4	Identify and explain a generic communications model
		c Outcome	4.1 4.2	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
	Specifi	c Outcome	4.2	Allalyse, interpret and implement a generic communication states
	5.	Title		Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
	5 .	Title		Identity product reaction, advantages and benefits to the
	Specifi	ic Outcome	5.1	Identify needs of the customer
		ic Outcome	5.2	Present features, advantages and benefits to the customer
	Specifi	ic Outcome	5.3	Demonstrate features, advantages and benefits
	Specifi	C Outcome	J.J	Demonstrate reaction, advantages and sensitive
				gi .
	6.	Title		Provide product training to others in the organisation
	0.	i ide		1 lovido product daminig to entiro in the enganistation
	Specif	ic Outcome	6.1	Establish an environment conducive to learning and development
	Opecii	ic Outcome	0.1	needs
	Specif	ic Outcome	6.2	Implement the product training activities
	Opcon	io oatoomo	J	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	7.	Title		Close a deal with a customer
	50.5		a the	# 150 No. 1
	Specif	ic Outcome	7.1	Apply personal selling skills to sell products or services
		ic Outcome	7.2	Apply closing techniques to sell products or services
	-1	18°		1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1930 € 1
			(3)	# d
	8.	Title	**	Identify brand mix elements
	Specif	ic Outcome	8.1	Describe factors influencing branding
		ic Outcome	8.2	Explain brand familiarity
	00.1	ř.		W/I
		5	¥.	
	9.	Title		Identify financial implications for making decisions
			- B	
		fic Outcome	9.1	Evaluate financial statements against reporting requirements.
	Specif	fic Outcome	9.2	Apply financial analysis tools to interpret and report on financial
	765			implications

10. Title		Integrate marketing plans with business process
Specific Outcome	10.1	Monitor the marketing environment and determine variables for marketing activities
Specific Outcome	10.2	Distinguish the role of marketing research and marketing information systems in investigating and understanding the operations of the market
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	10.3 10.4	place Distinguish characteristics of major markets Identify influences on consumer behaviour in relation to marketing activities
11. Title		Cooch others on mineiples of made the in an acceptable
ii. iide		Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4	Describe marketing principles and ethics to others Develop and implement a coaching / monitoring plan Develop and implement a monitoring programme Monitor events of a "marketing culture" in the organisation
# E #	ä	
12. Title	¥.	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
Specific Outcome	12.1	Monitor interaction between customer service providers and the customer
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	34.2 34.3	Monitor the customer's satisfaction Monitor key performance areas
13. Title	8 G 9 4 J	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	13.1 13.2	Listen to and interpret customer needs
Specific Outcome	13.3	Describe action plan Implement action plan to meet customer's needs
Specific Outcome	13.4	Track and measure the action plan to its completion
14. Title		Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
Specific Outcome	14.1	Identify "touch points" of customers
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	14.2 14.3	Determine solutions in areas of customer service Action change or improve areas of customer service
15. Title		Present data to stakeholders
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	15.1 15.2	Develop the presentation of data to stakeholders Present data to stakeholders

16. Title		Analyse and interpret data and marketing information
Specific Outcome	16.1	Analyse data and marketing information
Specific Outcome	16.2	Interpret data and marketing information
17. Title		Develop marketing strategies in line with portfolio strategy.
Specific Outcome	17.1	Identify and assess product positioning
Specific Outcome	17.2	Develop product and packaging or total product offering strategy.
Specific Outcome	17.3	Identify and develop pricing range and strategy.
Specific Outcome	17.4	Identify and develop marketing communications strategy.
Specific Outcome	17.5	Develop and align promotional activities and strategies.
Specific Outcome	17.6	Identify objectives distribution.
* #		
18. Title	1250	Develop and implement marketing plan in line with marketing
18. Title		strategy.
	. +	Strategy.
Specific Outcome	18.1	Identify and manage product and packaging changes (new or existing)
Specific Outcome	18.2	Implement and monitor pricing plan.
Specific Outcome	18.3	Develop and implement media plan.
Specific Outcome	18.4	Develop and implement promotional plan.
Specific Outcome	18.5	Develop and implement innovation plan.
Specific Outcome	18.6	Manage product profitability.
Shagilla ogragilla		The state of the s

virgida de processo de l'appres de bergalia a l'ancia de la la companya de la com

for the theorem with a finite set of the set of \mathcal{W} , we have

era long, o chaoantaoch eo eileoch eo e Vine ei e an eannaicha eologadaoch is einich lande i Courtaeochaochaitean neologadaoch i chaoantach

No. 1213

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

6

Credit:

360

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National First Degree in Marketing Management: Level 6 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Management their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Management offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National First Degree in Marketing Management will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Marketing Managers
- Brand Managers
- Brand Assistants
- Category Managers

- Marketing Directors
- Marketing Assistants
- Product Managers

This qualification will help the learner at Level 6 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Management.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Management. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification would be operating in an advanced environment of Marketing Management and will be more involved in the development, enhancement and growth of Marketing Management Technologies and practice. Learners will be learning around areas of Strategy, Customer Relations and Marketing Principles. Learners will also be involved with core issues of Customer Management, Marketing Communications and Marketing Research but will be furthering their specialisation Marketing Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the Diploma Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 5.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Articulate a vision and develop a strategic plan to meet the vision.
- Monitor and review activity plans and the performance levels of marketers and service providers.
- Manage all aspects of a communications project and review its effectiveness.
- Assess the sales environment in order to present a range of products and services to meet objectives.
- Identify and manage innovation opportunities and processes.
- Determine, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions and elements.
- Integrate and promote marketing principles, including ethics policies throughout the organization.

- · Formulate, design, implement, service delivery systems and processes.
- Measure and analyse customer service delivery systems and processes.
- Identify, design, implements, measure and analyse customer service levels.
- Establish and determine research requirements and design and recommend a research brief.
- Develop, monitor and namage portfolio communication and marketing mix strategies.
- Develop and write portfolio strategic plan to meet requirements.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The articulation of vision into strategic marketing objectives and strategies then monitoring activity plans to meet objectives.
- Performance criteria in terms of setting, collecting, comparing and providing feedback on performance.
- Marketing Communications projects, their identification, evaluation, selection, management and review.
- A range of products and services and their presentation in line with objectives and time frames.
- Innovation as an important part of marketing and its successful implementation in an organisation.
- Brand mix and the role viables and brand mix decision have on outcomes.
- Marketing principles and ethics and the importance of promoting and integrating these into marketing policy.
- Customer service levels, measurement and analysis and the design and implementation of customer service delivery systems.
- Research requirement, their establishment and systems and the design of a research brief.
- Marketing portfolio management including portfolio communications strategy, marketing, mix and strategic plans.

Bit on a literation of the Majoriet of A

and the control of the second of a second of the control of the second o

腹切 化能 哪門,這一就就就 医"如果大概"

Service of the service of the service of

under eine mit der eine der e Der eine de Der eine de

ekentyrer marresti grunn da

e to North Charactering through

January John M. Carlotte St. St. Commiss. John M.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Management qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Management industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- Brand Management
- Product Management
- Marketing Communications
- Marketing Research
- Customer Management
- Sales
- Customer Service
- Direct marketing
- General Marketing
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Advertising
- Promotions
- Public Relations

Note:

1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing

 In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc

Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- · A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

MANUSCO (1997)	Level 6	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a strategy using creative means to a range of stakeholders	60	60
	Interpret historical data and present a range of formula to influence decision making	60	60 60
		7	120
Core	Develop a strategic plan	15	15
2	Monitor and review activity plan	7	7
	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers	10	10
Yes	Manage a communications projects	15	15
	Present a range of products or services	15	15
н	Identify innovation opportunities	15	15
	Integrate brand mix elements	15	15
, * 5x t	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations	8	8
* 8	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	6	6
	Measure and analyse customer service level	12	12
*	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes	8	8
	Conceptualise and research requirements	10	10
æ	Design a research brief	10	10
	A LATER OF SHARE STORES OF STATE OF STA		146
Elective	Monitor and manage portfolio communication strategy	32	32
¥	Develop and manage portfolio marketing mix strategy	32	32
w	Develop portfolio strategic plan	30	30
			96

and the second of the second o

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

Core

1.	Title	Develop a strategic plan
2.	Title	Monitor and review activity plan
3.	Title	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
4.	Title	Manage a communications projects
5.	Title	Present a range of products or services
6.	Title	Identify innovation opportunities
7.	Title	Integrate brand mix elements
8.	Title	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
9.	Title	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
10.	Title	Measure and analyse customer service level
11.	Title	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
12.	Title	Conceptualise and research requirements
13.	Title	Design a research brief

Elective

14.	Title	Monitor and manage portfolio communication strategy
15.	Title	Develop and manage portfolio marketing mix strategy
16.	Title	Develop portfolio strategic plan

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

1. Title	8 9 9	Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and competitor environments
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

	2. Title	t * 83t	Monitor and review activity plan	
	Specific Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans	
	Specific Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results	
	Specific Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances	
	Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options	
	Specific Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations	
			and an incomplete	
	3. Title		Monitor performance of marketers and service providers	
	Specific Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria	
	Specific Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data	
	Specific Outcome	3.3	Compare actual to standard	
	Specific Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers	
	opeome caresme			
		20		
	4. Title		Manage a communications projects	
	T. 1100			
	Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and	
			format	
ij.	Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation	
	Specific Outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness	
	100			
	Title	*	Present a range of products or services	
	100 8000 NAN 10	11 TO 12	=	
	Specific Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services	
	Specific Outcome	5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment	
	Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services	
	4			
	9 9			
	6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities	
			The second secon	
	Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation	1
30	35	f f / se.	within an organisation	
	Specific Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation	
		· Francis	and the contract of the contra	
	7. Title	,	Integrate brand mix elements	
		37		
	Specific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix	
3	Specific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions	
	opecine outcome	1		
	**			
	8. Title	1 THE	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations	
	Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired culture	
	Canailia Outoomo	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture	
	Specific Outcome		Evaluate programme	
	Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme	

9. Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	
Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the maprogramme	arketing
Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices	
Specific Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
Specific Galacine	0.0	Correct directical marketing practices	
83			
10. Title		Measure and analyse customer service leve	1
Specific Outcome	10.1	Identify factors which influence customer se	nuine and necessarians
Specific Outcome	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors a	rvice and perceptions
opodino odtodino	10.2	customer service	na perceptions of
Specific Outcome	10.3		
opeonic outcome	10.5	Implement customer service measurement p	processes and collect
Specific Outcome	10.4		
opecine outcome	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer s	ervice levels
11. Title		Formulate, design and implement customer and processes	service delivery systems
0			8
Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan	to achieve desired
		service levels	
Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action	plans implemented
12. Title	8	Conceptualise and research requirements	28 ³
0			
Specific Outcome	12.1	Establish research requirements	
Specific Outcome	12.2	Determine research requirement systems	are talk a to the
13. Title		Design a research brief	
			4.27
Specific Outcome	13.1	Assess and recommend a research brief	***
Specific Outcome	13.2	Design a research brief to optimise results.	
	·	and the state of t	April Car Dinas are
14. Title		Monitor and manage portfolio communication	
Specific Outcome	14.1	Agree modfelle aus - Pt	100
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	14.1	Agree portfolio expenditure.	all to
	14.2	Approve media strategy.	3 44 to the
Specific Outcome	14.3	Monitor and review advertising development.	
Specific Outcome	14.4	Manage agency relationship.	
Specific Outcome	14.5	Develop consumer insights.	60
Specific Outcome	14.6	Monitor brand positioning within the portfolio.	17
- 25 67			and the same of th

. 4

is reasonally mitalogic

SEPTEM TRACES

15. Title		Develop and manage portfolio marketing mix strategy.		
Specific Outcome	15.1	Segment the category.		
Specific Outcome	15.2	Access portfolio and individual brand performance.		
Specific Outcome	15.3	Identify and develop category / portfolio innovation opportunities.		
Specific Outcome	15.4	Monitor product and packaging development.		
Specific Outcome	15.5	Review pricing activity.		
Specific Outcome	15.6	Manage project work.		
Specific Outcome	15.7	Monitor portfolio profitability.		
16. Title	Ŧ	Develop portfolio strategic plan.		
Specific Outcome	16.1	Develop and agree portfolio strategic objectives.		
Specific Outcome	16.2	Assess and recommend strategic options.		
Specific Outcome	16.3	Write portfolio strategic plan.		

ente for a victoria de la fillación de la formación de la fillación de la formación de la form

No. 1214

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

7

Credit:

514

issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Second Degree in Marketing Management: Level 7 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Management their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Management offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National Second Degree in Marketing Management will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Marketing Managers
- Brand Managers
- Brand Assistants
- Category Managers

- Marketing Directors
- · Marketing Assistants
- Product Managers

This qualification will help the learner at Level 7 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Management.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Management. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

This higher degree will allow learners to operate at a strategic and conceptual level in designing and strategising new technologies, methodologies and techniques of furthering the purposes and benefits of Marketing Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Degree - Marketing Management or equivalent NQF 6.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Analyse and evaluate global trends and develop a vision for an organization.
- Develop a monitoring system and evaluate and monitor a strategic marketing plan.
- · Monitor and control all aspects of an internal or external marketing unit.
- Interpret a brief and develop a public relations and marketing campaign.
- Develop, plan and review alternative marketing opportunities.
- Assess current marketing culture and set marketing culture and ethics objectives to instill a marketing culture and ethics in all stakeholder groups.
- Create and maintain a positive culture of customer service in the supply chain and conceptualise innovative customer service strategies.
- Develop, assess and write research policies and sponsor research activities for market research projects.
- Set marketing policy to meet business strategic plan and co-ordinate position and synergize the strategic marketing plan.
- Manage specialized areas in Marketing Management.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The overall process for developing an organisation vision.
- The strategic marketing plans development and evaluation.
- The process for starting and structuring a marketing unit and the application of financial plans and controls.
- Public relations and marketing campaigns are defined and interpreted strategies developed to meet requirements.
- The involvement of all stakeholders to develop alternative opportunities.
- Marketing culture establishment in all stakeholder groups.
- Marketing best practice ethics are established, set and implemented within given resource constraints.
- Customer service culture is developed and innovative systems conceptualised to meet objectives.
- Research projects are identified, sponsored and monitored.
- Research policies are developed, agreed and recommended and assist organisation to meet its
 objectives.
- Marketing policy is designed, developed, implemented, monitored and reviewed to meet strategic business plan.
- Markets are analysed, segmented according to specified criteria and performance standards set and the marketing strategy positioned.
- All specialised areas in marketing are identified, explained and managed and plans made to meet objectives.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Management qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Management industry, learners may also be able to carry out careers in

- Brand Management
- Product Management
- Marketing Communications
- Marketing Research
- Customer Management
- Sales
- Customer Service
- Direct marketing
- General Marketing
- Data Base Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Advertising
- Promotions
- Public Relations

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing; Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 7	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a national strategy benchmarked to add value internationally	70	70
-0	Establish scenarios of best practice	70	70 60
			140
Core	Develop a vision for an organisation	20	20
	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan	20	20
	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)	60	60
	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign	20	20
	Generate alternative opportunities	10	10
Zi. W	Instil Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups	8	8
99 99 W W W W	Set Marketing Ethics Policy	8	8
# H H	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain	20	20
	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies	30	30
	Sponsor research projects	10	10
** o	Set research policy	10	10
4		1980-1980-1980-1980	216
Elective	Set marketing policy to meet business strategic plan	40	40
	Co-ordinate and synergize strategic marketing plan	40	40
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Position a market strategy	40	40
Tale Control of the C	Manage specialised areas in marketing management	40	40
59		-	160
			100

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONALSECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

Core

1.	Title	Develop a vision for an organisation
2.	Title	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan
3.	Title	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)
4.	Title	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign
5.	Title	Generate alternative opportunities
6.	Title	Instil Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups
7.	Title	Set Marketing Ethics Policy
8.	Title	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain
9.	Title	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies
10.	Title	Sponsor research projects
11.	Title	Set research policy

Elective

12.	Title	Set marketing policy to meet business strategic plan
13.	Title	Co-ordinate and synergize strategic marketing plan
14.	Title	Position a market strategy
15.	Title	Manage specialised areas in marketing management

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

1. Title		Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and competitor environments
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

2.	Title		Monitor and review activity plan
Specifi	ic Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
Specif	ic Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results
Specif	ic Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances
Specif	ic Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
Specif	ic Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations
Ороси			
***	18	:+:	
3.	Title		Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
Casaif	io Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
Specif	ic Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data
Specii	ic Outcome	3.3	Compare actual to standard
	ic Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
Specii	ric Outcome	3.4	Cive recorded to manufacture and
	er jä		
- B B	Tilla		Manage a communications projects
4.	Title		Warrage a communication projects
Speci	fic Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and format
	C- 0	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
	fic Outcome		Review the communications project effectiveness
Speci	fic Outcome	4.3	Veniem the continuation project enterty
	# ·		
20			Present a range of products or services
5.	Title		Plesent a range of products of solutions
		E 4	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
Speci	fic Outcome	5.1	Assess the internal and external sales environment
Speci	ific Outcome	5.2	Present a range of products or services
Speci	ific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products of solvious
	%		
^	Title		Identify innovation opportunities
6.	rue	S (8)	70000000000000000000000000000000000000
0	ifia Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
Spec	ific Outcome	0.1	within an organisation
0	ifia Outoomo	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
Spec	ific Outcome	0.2	Load and manage innerses
			2 8 8
7.	Title		Integrate brand mix elements
	Verenza artistaciones nacional actividade	V	Determine variables of the brand mix
Spec	ific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brail of this
Spec	ific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
- 65 - 25 - 20	4.7		N 12 3
53	F1		- Charles throughout organisations
8.	Title		Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
		58 8	
Spec	cific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
			culture
Spec	cific Outcome	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture
Spec	cific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme
155 M			

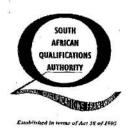
	Y.3	
9. Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing
		programme
Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices
Specific Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices
W.		Towns and marketing practices
F 5 9		
10. Title		Measure and analyse customer service level
		Measure and analyse customer service level
Specific Outcome	10.1	Identify factors which influence and
Specific Outcome	10.2	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
opcome outcome	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of
Specific Outcome	40.0	customer service
Specific Outcome	10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes and collect
0		data
Specific Outcome	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
		The second of th
11. Title		Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems
		and processes
2	vg.0 100	
Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired
		service levels
Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
986 NS AC W		Planto Implomotion
20		
12. Title		Set marketing policy to meet business strategic plan
		S Postoy to moot business strategic pian
Specific Outcome	12.1	Design and develop marketing policies
Specific Outcome	12.2	Implement marketing policies
Specific Outcome	12.3	Monitor and review marketing policies
opeome outbonio	12.0	World and review marketing policies
	88 8	
13. Title		Co pediants and
io. Tide		Co-ordinate and synergize strategic marketing plan
Specific Outcome	40.4	
Specific Outcome	13.1	Define and analyse markets for new business opportunities
Specific Outcome	13.2	Segment and target specific markets
Specific Outcomes	13.3	Analyse and explain competitive situations
Specific Outcome	13.4	Setting performance standards
	17	
14. Title		Position a market strategy
Specific Outcome	14.1	Determine and establish buyers perceptions, positions and behaviour
Specific Outcome	14.2	Monitor positioning of market strategy
Specific Outcome	14.3	Evaluate and review positioning of market strategy
nezes — in an anna e individual de come alla della come della della della come della della della come della della della della come della d		Paradimina of market attategy
100		

Specific Outcome Specif

No. 1215

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

A

Credit:

134

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rational of the qualification

The National Qualification in Marketing Communications: Level 4 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who enter the field of Marketing Communications. The whole marketing field per se is a key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner. The Marketing Communications National Certificate at NQF Level 4 will provide a broad knowledge and skills needed in the industry and to progress along a career path for learners who

- Were previously disadvantaged or who were unable to complete their schooling and were therefore denied access to Further Education and Training.
- Have worked in Marketing Communications for many years, but have no formal qualification in Marketing Communications.
- Wish to extend their range of skills and knowledge of the industry so that they can become knowledge workers in Marketing Communications.

The National Certificate in Marketing Communications: Level 4 allows the learner to work towards a nationally recognised whole qualification. The qualification will allow both those in formal educations and those already employed in marketing organisations access, due to its flexibility. It aims to develop individuals who are informed and skilled in Marketing Communications.

The qualification has building blocks that can be developed further and will lead to a more defined Marketing Communications career path at NQF Level 5. It also focuses on the skills, knowledge, values and attitudes required to progress further. The intention is

- To promote the development of knowledge and skills that are required in all sub-sectors of marketing.
- To release the potential of people.
- To provide opportunities for people to move up the value chain.

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Creative Directors
- Account Executives
- Media Planners
- Marketing Managers

- Marketing Traffic Controllers
- Copywriters
- Marketing Communication Specialists

The National Certificate in Marketing Communications: Level 4 should produce knowledgeable, skilled market communicators who are able to contribute to improved productivity and efficiency within the marketing industry. It should provide the means for current individuals in the Marketing Communications field to receive recognition of prior learning and to upgrade their skills and knowledge base. The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to give a broad understanding of marketing and the electives, which will allow for a specific competence in Marketing Communications. It will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Any individuals who are or wish to be involved in Marketing Communications will access this qualification. It also serves as the entry qualification into Marketing Communications Qualifications in the higher band of learning. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 4. This qualification is also related to other qualifications such as the National Certificate in Marketing Research, the National Certificate in Customer Management and the National Certificate in Marketing Management where all four of these qualifications will share fundamental competence as well as core competence. Portability across all four of these National Certificates are therefore ensured.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a "complete and whole" qualification, any learner who can provide guidance of the learning assumed to be in place, has open access to this qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence in communicating verbally and in writing and computer technology at Level 3 on the NQF or equivalent.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Work with other members of a marketing team to meet performance standards and objectives.
- Identify, assess, utilize and account for marketing expertise and resources in order to meet marketing objectives and report on results.
- Identify prospective customers and their needs and present the correct features, advantages and benefits to enable customers to make informed buying decisions.
- Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning, product life cycles, market segmentation, marketing mix and the competitive environment for products and services.
- Demonstrate an understanding for and comply with legislation, rules, activities and transactions.
- Identify and evaluate brand product and service promotional opportunities and co-ordinate and evaluate promotional activities and results.
- Comply with organisational ethics by applying marketing principles, concepts and culture through the identification of all stakeholders and their relationships.
- Liase with a range of customers ad identifying and solving customers complaints and problems.
- Identify, monitor and review marketing information and gather and process data for research and information purposes.
- Demonstrate an understanding of issues around Marketing, ethical and legal issues pertaining to marketing and Marketing Communications.
- Monitor and control an inter-departmental traffic system ensuring the client's brief is met and communication between client, providers and organisation is controlled.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The importance of working together and communicating with all stakeholders in order to meet marketing requirements and objectives.
- Giving identified customers the correct information (features, advantages and benefits) to enable them to make informed buying decisions.
- The legal and ethical requirements in the marketing field.
- Product positioning, target markets and the competitive environment.
- Promotions which deal with either brand, product or service.
- The importance of knowing the internal and external stakeholders and believing in marketing as a profession.
- The methods, techniques and principles of dealing with customers and clients to meet their needs.
- Being able to source expertise and resources to assist with information gathering and processing.
- Defining and explaining the concept of Marketing Communications and integrated Marketing Communications.
- Identifying and interpreting legal, regulatory, social, ethical and cultural issues in Marketing Communications.
- Describing and interpreting issues and concepts pertaining to creative principles of Marketing Communications.
- Processing, controlling and maintaining an inter-departmental traffic system between all stakeholders.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, and reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications Qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Communications industry, learners may also be able to enter careers in

- Advertising
- Promotion
- Public Relations
- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Research
- Marketing Consultancy
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

- The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing.
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor, insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center, Internet Marketing; Point of Sale etc.

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Communications field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 4	Сг	Total
undamental	Communicate verbally and in writing to a range of stakeholders	20	20
	Work with a range of software packages to generate, maintain and manipulate data	20	20
			40
	Work as a member of a marketing team	5	5
Core	WOLK as a Member of a marketing team		
ν.	Meet marketing performance standards	4	4
	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives	4	4
	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	6	6 .
	Identify customers of the business	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning	4	4
	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications	4	4
	Deal with brand, product and service promotions	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment	4	4
	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture	4	4
	Comply with organisational ethics	4	4
	Identify internal and external stakeholders	4	4
the transfer of	Liaise with a range of customers of a business	4	4
	Handle a range of customer complaints	4	4
2 2 2	Identify expertise and resources	3	3
	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data	4	4 70
Elective	Understand and define the nature, role and history of marketing communication	3	3
	Understand ethical, social, cultural and legal issues in marketing communication	3	3
	Understand and define integrated marketing communications and its role	6	6
5 <u>6</u> (fer	Understand the creative principles of marketing	4	4
8	communications Operate an inter-departmental traffic system	8	8
	Operate an inter-departmental traine system	+	24

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core

1.	Title	Work as a member of a marketing team
2.	Title	Meet marketing performance standards
3.	Title	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
4.	Title	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
5.	Title	Identify customers of the business
6.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
7.	Title	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
8.	Title	Deal with brand, product and service promotions
9.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
10.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
11.	Title	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
12.	Title	Comply with organisational ethics
13.	Title	Identify internal and external stakeholders
14.	Title	Liaise with a range of customers of a business
15.	Title	Handle a range of customer complaints
16.	Title	Identify expertise and resources
17.	Title	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data

Elective

Title	Understand and define the nature, role and history of marketing communication
Title	Understand ethical, social, cultural and legal issues in marketing communication
Title	Understand and define integrated marketing communications and its role
Title	Understand the creative principles of marketing communications
Title	Operate an inter-departmental traffic system
	Title Title Title

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

1. Title		Work as a member of a marketing team
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4	Communicate with all relevant stakeholders to enhance teamwork Report on team progress to appropriate authority and team Display tendencies to work with others as a member of a marketing team Handle and resolve areas of conflict

SENT NO. 10 NO.	
2. Title	Meet marketing performance standards
	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing performance standards
Specific Outcome 2.1	Follow instructions to meet standards
Specific Outcome 2.2	
Specific Outcome 2.3	Meet marketing objectives
Specific Outcome 2.4	Report on marketing objectives progress
3. Title	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
	a se a service d
Specific Outcome 3.1	Identify and assess marketing resources required
Specific Outcome 3.2	Utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
Specific Outcome 3.3	Account for marketing resources
St. St. Marketter (Mail 35	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
4. Title	1 Art 1200
Specific Outcome 4.1	Determine and communicate product features, advantages and benefits
Opoonio watering	Describe physical specifications, features, advantages and benefits
Specific Outcome 4.2	Describe buyarear about action of the control of th
g g. times a section	
	Identify customers of the business
5. Title	Identity customers of the business
Specific Outcome 5.1	Identify prospective customers and establish their needs
Oposiiis	Establish and build the customer base
Specific Outcome 5.2	Latabilati dila balia ana ana
व "	
C Title	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
6. Title	
Specific Outcome 6.1	Describe and explain product positioning strategies
Specific Outcome 6.2	Position the product in relation to the market
Specific Outcome 6.3	Explain and describe product life cycles
Specific Odicome 5.5	
*	
7. Title	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
7. 1109	to the control of the
Specific Outcome 7.1	Use and interpret legal documentation to ensure compliance with legal
Specific Outcome 7.1	and amenicational requirements
Specific Outcome 7.2	
Specific Outcome 7.2	and offine hyeiness
Specific Outcome 7.3	
Specific Odicome 7.0	applicable to marketing transactions
	and and analysis assembliance
8. Title	Deal with brand, product, and service promotions
	Evaluate brand, product and service promotion opportunities
Specific Outcome 8.1	
Specific Outcome 8.2	
Specific Outcome 8.3	Evaluate pratic, product and service profitotions

9. Title		Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
Specific Outcome	9.1	Describe market segmentation and market segmentation
	78 9287929	processes
Specific Outcome	9.2	Explain positioning strategies for chosen segments
Specific Outcome	9.3	Explain market segmentation in relation to the marketing mix
10. Title		Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
0:5- O. t	40.4	# 17 m
Specific Outcome	10.1	Explain the nature and the extent of the competitive
Casaifia Outanna	400	environment
Specific Outcome	10.2	Retain the competitive environment of products or services
	4 8	
11. Title		Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
Specific Outcome	11.1	Identify and define what marketing is
Specific Outcome	11.2	Identify marketing principles and concepts
Specific Outcome	11.3	Identify the benefits of instilling in self a marketing culture
Specific outcome	11.4	Persuade others of the benefits of a marketing culture
40 70.	28.	
12. Title		Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
Specific Outcome	12.1	Describe the code of conduct and ethical issues
Specific Outcome	12.2	Adhere to code of conduct
Specific Outcome	12.3	Identify and understand the ethical issues in the organisation
oposino outoomo	12.0	identity and understand the ethical issues in the organisation
- 100 A		
13. Title		Identify internal and external stakeholders
Specific Outcome	13.1	Identify internal and external stakeholders
Specific Outcome	13.2	Describe the stakeholders' relationship to each other
Specific Outcome	13.3	Initiate contact with a range of customers
8		
44 . TH-	*	1900 M
14. Title		Liaise with a range of customers of a business
Specific Outcome	14.1	Initiate contact with a range of customers
Specific Outcome	14.2	Maintain contact with a range of customers
Specific Outcome	14.3	Administer contact with a range of customers
openio outonio	14.0	Administer contact with a range of customers
15. Title		Handle a range of customer complaints
Specific Outcome	15.1	Identify the customers problem
Specific Outcome	15.1	
Specific Outcome	15.3	Commit to solving the customer's problem
Specific Outcome	15.4	Arrange correct planning and solution to the customer's problem
Specific Outcome	11 200 mm	Communicate with all stakeholders
opecine Outcome	15.5	Provide Practical business solutions

16.	Title	20	Identify expertise and resources
0	fin Outcome	16.1	Determine criteria for expertise and resources
	fic Outcome	16.2	Establish and record expertise and resources
	ific Outcome	16.3	Report on expertise and resources
Speci	ific Outcome	10.5	
17.	Title		Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data
	W 92		
		1425	
Snec	ific Outcome	17.1	Identify marketing information flow needs
	ific Outcome	17.2	Monitor and review marketing information flow
	ific Outcome	17.3	Gather data for researching and information purposes
	ific Outcome	17.4	Process data for researching information purposes
Spec	me Outcome	17.7	1100000 4444 191 190 944 944 944 944 944 944 944 944 944 9
40	Title		Demonstrate an understanding and define the nature, role and history of
18.	Title		marketing communication
			(6)
٠	ir- Ouleans	18.1	Define and explain marketing communications, marketing
Spec	ific Outcome	10.1	communications characteristics and objectives
2 0 100	·- ^ ·	40.0	Explain how marketing communications work and how it is classified
	ific Outcome	18.2	Define and explain persuasive communication
	cific Outcome	18.3	Identify and explain the role of marketing communications in the
Spec	cific Outcome	18.4	overall marketing process
	VARAT - 2005 18		Explain the history, development and functions of the South African
Spec	cific Outcome	18.5	Explain the history, development and runctions of the South American
			marketing communications industry
	10 12	76	
19.	Title		Demonstrate an understanding of ethical, social, cultural and legal
19.	Tiuc	(%)	issues in marketing communication
	W.		
Caa	cific Outcome	19.1	Identify and interpret regulatory issues in marketing communications
		19.2	Identify and interpret social, ethical, and cultural issues in marketing
Spe	cific Outcome	19.2	communication
			Communication
		50	
	Tille		Demonstrate an understanding of and define integrated marketing
20.	Title		communications and its role
	36		COMMUNICATION OF THE PARTY OF T
	-16 d	20.1	Define integrated marketing communications
Spe	cific outcome	20.1	Define and explain the objectives of integrated marketing
Spe	cific Outcome	20.2	communications
_		00.0	Describe integrated marketing communications tools
Spe	cific Outcome	20.3	Describe littediated intervenia sommer passes

	21. Title	200 G	Demonstrate an understanding of creative principles of marketing communications
	Specific Outcome	21.1	Describe and explain the history and nature of copywriting
	Specific Outcome	21.2	Describe and explain the practice of copywriting
	Specific Outcome	21.3	Describe and interpret the characteristics and constraints of the various media
	Specific Outcome	21.4	Describe and explain the nature and role of the various creative elements available
()	Specific Outcome	21.5	Describe and explain the creative philosophies of leading advertising agencies
	100		
	22. Title	£	Operate an inter-departmental traffic system
	Specific Outcome	22.1	Receive and interpret client's brief
	Specific Outcome		Prepare and maintain job bags
	Specific Outcome		Co-ordinate and schedule workflow
	Specific Outcome		Control communication between client, provider and organisation

No. 1216

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

5

Credit:

247

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Diploma in Marketing Communications: Level 5 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who are already involved in the field of Marketing Communications or who enter the field at a higher level. Learners recognise that marketing is an essential and key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner.

This qualification also reflects the needs of the marketing sector both now and in the future: it gives accessibility and flexibility to the learner and to the employer. The level of flexibility is reflected in the multiple job roles and careers, organisational requirements and changing technological nature of marketing and at the same time it allows the individual to work towards a nationally recognised qualification

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Creative Directors
- Account Executives
- Media Planners
- Marketing Managers

- Marketing Traffic Controllers
- Copywriters
- Marketing Communication Specialists

The National Diploma in Marketing Communications is structured in such a way that it exposes learners to a broad set of core competences while the electives allow for special competence in Marketing Communications. It certainly promotes the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification will have demonstrated competence at NQF Level 4 in the area of Marketing Communications or will have attained an equivalent qualification at that level. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 5 on the National Qualifications Framework and learners will have acquired a range of fundamental, core and elective competence around the areas of Marketing Strategy, Marketing Customer Relations, Principles of Marketing, Marketing Communications, Marketing Management, Marketing Research and Customer Management. Learners will have also demonstrated competence against specialised outcomes in the area of Marketing Communications.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Certificate in Marketing, Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 4.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Conduct a marketing situational analysis while leading a team of Marketers and Service Providers.
- Develop, implement and manage a marketing related project and / or activity plan, and implement
 a generic marketing communications strategy.
- Present the features, advantages and benefits of products to customers so that a deal can be closed.
- Provide product training to others in the organisation and coach others on the principles of marketing in an organisation.
- Identify brand mix elements and financial implecations for decision making.
- Integrate marketing plans with the business process.
- Monitor and control the handling of customers, customer needs and requirements and areas of customer service impact.
- Analyse and interpret marketing information and present marketing data to stakeholders.
- Co-ordinate and organize marketing communications production.
- Interpret, evaluate and buy media and manage a media campaign.
- Investigate, explain and apply marketing communications concepts and lateral thinking processes.
- Demonstrate an understanding of marketing communications roles, art direction, publishing and graphic design.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- Data gathering processes, it's analysis and the drawing of conclusions and making recommendations.
- How to get the best results from a team of marketers or service providers by monitoring and rectifying performance.
- · Project plans and their successful conclusion.
- · Communications models and strategies and the elements and processes.
- Customer needs and their identification to enable the production and demonstration of features, advantages and benefits.
- Training and coaching environment establishment and implementation.
- Product and service selling methods, techniques and principles.
- Brand influences and familiarity factors.
- Financial statement analysis and evaluation.
- · Marketing activities and the issues, roles and characteristics that affect them.
- Customer service providers and their interaction to establish satisfied customers by interpreting and meeting customer needs and all areas that impact on customer service levels.
- Marketing data, it's analysis; interpretation and presentation to all stakeholders.
- · Marketing Communications, processes and production, concepts and roles.
- Marketing media and how to plan, buy and evaluate this.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications Qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Communications industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- Advertising
- Promotion
- Public Relations
- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Research
- Marketing Consultancy
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Communications field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

· A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience

words to the second control of

- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 5	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Use a range of electronic media to sell an idea to a range of stakeholders	40	40
s 8 0	Present data based on sound information technology practices	40	40
0	Conduct a marketing cituational analysis	5	80 5
Core	Conduct a marketing situational analysis	3	٦
	Lead a team of marketers and service providers	10	10
	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan	5	5
	Implement a generic communication strategy	10	10
3 -	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer	10	10
	Provide product training to others in the organisation	10	10
	Close a deal with a customer	5	5
	Identify brand mix elements	8	8
	Identify financial implications for making decisions	8	4
	Integrate marketing plans with business process	6	6
28 20	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation	5	5
	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service	6	6 .
4 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans	8	8
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact	6	6
	Present data to stakeholders	5	5
	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information	8 -	8
			115
Elective	Manage marketing communications production	12	12
	Evaluate and buy media	20	20
55 56	Investigate and explain marketing communications concepts	8	8
	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing communications roles	12	12
	2 12 W O 8050 2004 48 VO 944 50 20 40 14 14 15 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		52

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Core

 Title Conduct a marketing situational analysis 	
2. Title Lead a team of marketers and service providers	
3. Title Develop, implement and manage a project / activ	rity plan
4. Title Implement a generic communication strategy	
5. Title Identify product features, advantages and benefit	ts to the customer
6. Title provide product training to others in the organisat	tion
7. Title Close a deal with a customer	W. W.
8. Title Identify brand mix elements	
9. Title Identify financial implications for making decision	S
10 Title Integrate marketing plans with business process	
11. Title Coach others on principles of marketing in an org	ganisation
12 Title Monitor handling of customers by frontline custor	mer service
 Title Manage customer requirements and needs and in plans 	implement action
14. Title Identify and manage areas of customer service in	mpact
15. Title Present data to stakeholders	
16. Title Analyse and interpret data and marketing information	ațion

Elective

17.	Title	Manage marketing communications production
18.	Title	Evaluate and buy media
19.	Title	Investigate and explain marketing communications concepts
20.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing communications roles

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

1.	Title	(8	Conduct a marketing situational analysis
Spe	cific Outcome	1.1	Gather data relating to project from the environment
	cific Outcome	1.2	Analyse data for the marketing situational analysis
	cific Outcome	1.3	Draw conclusion and make recommendations
2.	Title	2	Lead a team of marketers and service providers
Spe	cific Outcome	2.1	Set objectives for marketing team
	cific Outcome	2.2	Coach marketing staff to be able to achieve objectives
	cific Outcome	2.3	Monitor performance of marketing staff against targets
Spe	ecific Outcome	2.4	Provide feedback on performance
	cific Outcome	2.5	Take corrective action as needed

3. Title	ti efter	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
Specific Outcome	3.1	Evaluate proposals and select preferred option
Specific Outcome	3.2	Conceptualise plan
Specific Outcome	3.3	Delegate tasks
Specific Outcome		
Specific Outcome	3.4	Track project
4. Title	¥	Implement a generic communication strategy
Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify and explain a generic communications model
Specific Outcome	4.2	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
opcomo odicomo	7.2	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
***	5.5	
5. Title	8	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
J. 1145		receivery product reatures, advantages and benefits to the customer
Specific Outcome	5.1	Identify needs of the customer
Specific Outcome	5.2	Present features, advantages and benefits to the customer
Specific Outcome	5.3	Demonstrate features, advantages and benefits
opcome outcome	0.0	Demonstrate realtries, advantages and penellits
6. Title		Provide product training to others in the organisation
Specific Outcome	6.1	Establish an environment conducive to learning and development needs
Specific Outcome	6.2	Implement the product training activities
	822	promote a product a animing accuration
		0
7. Title		Close a deal with a customer
1332 T.	3.0	
Specific Outcome	7.1	Apply personal selling skills to sell products or services
Specific Outcome	7.2	Apply closing techniques to sell products or services
		Teply ordering to drining to soil products of services
•		ee e gra
8. Title		Identify brand mix elements
30	S. 188	additing brains mix distributes
Specific Outcome	8.1	Describe factors influencing branding
Specific Outcome	8.2	Explain brand familiarity
oposino outoomo	0.2	Explain braild familiality
9. Title	980	Identify financial implications for making decisions
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	9.1 9.2	Evaluate financial statements against reporting requirements. Apply financial analysis tools to interpret and report on financial
ē	990 77 0	implications

10. Title		Integrate marketing plans with business process
Specific Outcome	10.1	Monitor the marketing environment and determine variables for marketing activities
Specific Outcome	10.2	Distinguish the role of marketing research and marketing information systems in investigating and understanding the operations of the market
Oific Outcome	10.3	place Distinguish characteristics of major markets
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	10.4	Identify influences on consumer behaviour in relation to marketing activities
11. Title	20 40 50	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
Specific Outcome	11.1	Describe marketing principles and ethics to others
Specific Outcome	11.2	Develop and implement a coaching / monitoring plan
Specific Outcome	11.3	Develop and implement a monitoring programme
Specific Outcome	11.4	Monitor events of a "marketing culture" in the organisation
	# #	
12. Title		Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
Specific Outcome	12.1	Monitor interaction between customer service providers and the customer
Specific Outcome	34.2	Monitor the customer's satisfaction
Specific Outcome	34.3	Monitor key performance areas
		to a de and implement action
13. Title	·«	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
Specific Outcome	13.1	Listen to and interpret customer needs
Specific Outcome	13.2	Describe action plan
Specific Outcome	13.3	Implement action plan to meet customer's needs
Specific Outcome	13.4	Track and measure the action plan to its completion
14. Title	*	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
Specific Outcome	14.1	Identify "touch points" of customers
Specific Outcome	14.2	Determine solutions in areas of customer service
Specific Outcome	14.3	Action change or improve areas of customer service
		, e
15. Title	at.	Present data to stakeholders
Specific Outcome	15.1	Develop the presentation of data to stakeholders
Specific Outcome	15.2	

16. Title		Analyse and interpret data and marketing information
Specific Outcome	16.1	Analyse data and marketing information
Specific Outcome	16.2	Interpret data and marketing information
n ja varkiiki ili ili ili ili ili ili ili ili il		For the proof of the first of the second of
1780 A - 1880 A - 188	a agrati,	
17. Title	, i'v	Manage marketing communications production
Specific Outcome	17.1	Describe printing processes to enhance production.
Specific Outcome	17.2	Co-ordinate the production of marketing communications materials.
Specific Outcome	17.3	Describe the requirements of Internet and web design.
Specific Outcome	17.4	Describe process for the production of films and videos.
Specific Outcome	17.5	Identify, evaluate and select production options.
Specific Outcome	17.6	Organise and conduct shoot.
Specific Outcome	17.7	Describe the process of radio production.
10 400	M	
18 27		the first water with the second of the second
18. Title		Evaluate and buy media
Specific Outcome	18.1	Interpret media plan and objectives.
Specific Outcome	18.2	Analyse, evaluate and buy media.
Specific Outcome	18.3	Media campaign is monitored and managed.
	200	
		to the second se
19. Title		Investigate and explain marketing communications concepts
Specific Outcome	19.1	Identify and explain marketing communication concepts and ideas.
Specific Outcome	19.2	Implement low and high focus thinking.
Specific Outcome		Explain and apply lateral thinking processes.
	00	
20. Title		
20. Tide	*	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing communications roles
Specific Outcome	20.1	Explain the principles and roles of art direction.
Specific Outcome		Implement art direction.
Specific Outcome		Explain the role of art director.
Specific Outcome	20.4	Describe and implement desktop publishing and multi-media.
	20.5	Describe and explain marketing communications research.
Specific Outcome	20.6	Describe and explain graphic design.

No. 1217

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATION NQF LEVEL 6

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

6

Credit:

366

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National First Degree in Marketing Communications: Level 6 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Communications their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Communications offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National First Degree in Marketing Communications will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Creative Directors
- Account Executives
- Media Planners
- Marketing Managers

- Marketing Traffic Controllers
- Copywriters
- Marketing Communication Specialists

This qualification will help the learner at Level 6 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Communications.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Communications. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification would be operating in an advanced environment of Marketing Communications and will be more involved in the development, enhancement and growth of Marketing Communications Technologies and practice. Learners will be learning around areas of Strategy, Customer Relations and Marketing Principles. Learners will also be involved with core issues of Marketing Management, Customer Management and Marketing Research but will be furthering their specialisation Marketing Communications.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the Diploma Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 5.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Articulate a vision and develop a strategic plan to meet the vision.
- Monitor and review activity plans and the performance levels of marketers and service providers.
- Manage all aspects of a communications project and review its effectiveness.
- Assess the sales environment in order to present a range of products and services to meet objectives.
- Identify and manage innovation opportunities and processes.
- Determine, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions and elements.
- Integrate and promote marketing principles, including ethics policies throughout the organization.

- Formulate, design, implement, service delivery systems and processes.
- Measure and analyse customer service delivery systems and processes.
- Identify, design, implements, measure and analyse customer service levels.
- Establish and determine research requirements and design and recommend a research brief.
- Develop, implement and monitor marketing communication objectives and strategies.
- Manage the account team and the communications research process.
- Develop and implement the marketing communication concept and creative process.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The articulation of vision into strategic marketing objectives and strategies then monitoring activity plans to meet objectives.
- Performance criteria in terms of setting, collecting, comparing and providing feedback on performance.
- Marketing Communications projects, their identification, evaluation, selection, management and review.
- A range of products and services and their presentation in line with objectives and time frames.
- Innovation as an important part of marketing and its successful implementation in an organisation.
- Brand mix and the role viables and brand mix decision have on outcomes.
- Marketing principles and ethics and the importance of promoting and integrating these into marketing policy.
- Customer service levels, measurement and analysis and the design and implementation of customer service delivery systems.
- Research requirement, their establishment and systems and the design of a research brief.
- Marketing communication objectives, strategies, campaign and communications research process.
- The marketing account team and its management process.
- The creative marketing process, its development and implementation.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Communications industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- Advertising
- Promotion
- Public Relations
- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Research
- Marketing Consultancy
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

- The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Communications field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

F	Level 6	Cr	Tota
Fundamental	Present a strategy using creative means to a range of stakeholders	60	60
	Interpret historical data and present a range of formula to influence decision making	60	60 60
			120
Core	Develop a strategic plan	15	15
e e e e	Monitor and review activity plan	7	7
200 E	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers	10	10
	Manage a communications projects	15	15
	Present a range of products or services	15	15
	Identify innovation opportunities	15	15
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Integrate brand mix elements	15	15
N 07	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations	8	8
	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	6	6
	Measure and analyse customer service level	12	12
e terr	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes	8	8
	Conceptualise and research requirements	10	10
	Design a research brief	10	10
			146
lective	Develop campaign; media and creative strategies	20	20
10	Manage the account team	20	20
	Manage the communications research process	20	20
2 St.	Develop and implement the creative process	40	40
		an a And	100

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

Core

1.	Title	Develop a strategic plan
2.	Title	Monitor and review activity plan
3.	Title	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
4.	Title	Manage a communications projects
5.	Title	Present a range of products or services
6.	Title	Identify innovation opportunities
7.	Title	Integrate brand mix elements
8.	Title	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
9.	Title	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
10.	Title	Measure and analyse customer service level
11.	Title	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
12.	Title	Conceptualise and research requirements
13.	Title	Design a research brief

Elective

14.	Title	Develop campaign; media and creative strategies	
15.	Title	Manage the account team	
16.	Title	Manage the communications research process	
17.	Title	Develop and implement the creative process	

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

1. Title		Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and
	19 20 - 22-01	competitor environments
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

			The state of the s
	2. Title		Monitor and review activity plan
88	Specific Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
	Specific Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results
	Specific Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances
	Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
	Specific Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations
	- F		
	¥(1		4
	Title		Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
			monitor performance of managers and service providers
	Specific Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
	Specific Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data
	Specific Outcome	3.3	outside the same and the same a
	Specific Outcome		
	Specific Outcome	3.4	
	g (2 72 m) A		The sample of the state of the
	4 . The		
	4. Title		Manage a communications projects
	0		
	Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and
	4		format
	Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
	Specific Outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness
	10 (38)		
	(#)		
	5. Title		Present a range of products or services
	Specific Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
	Specific Outcome	5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment
	Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
		***	ASSET FOR MATERIAL OF THE WAR CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR OF THE WAR
			그는 사람들은 기계
	6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities
	a see a	- 20-0	ting the second and the control of t
	Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
	Fired ● 15 to 10		within an organisation
	Specific Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
			and algebra a comment.
	7. Title		Integrate brand mix elements
	Specific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix
	Specific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
		(4.5	The second of th
	8. Title	8	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
	v. Huc	40	r rottiote principles of marketing unoughout organisations
	Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
	-Lagura agreement	J. 1	culture
	Specific Outcome	8.2	
			Implement programme to achieve desired culture
	openiic Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme

		99	
	9. Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
	Specific Outcome 9).1 ·	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing
	Outsille Outsoms O	9.2	programme Evaluate marketing ethics practices
		9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices
	Specific Outcome 9	7.0	Coffect diferrical marketing process
		. 7 -	
	10. Title	* e * *	Measure and analyse customer service level
	Onneifie Outcome	0.1	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
		0.1	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of
	Specific Outcome	10.2	customer service
	Specific Outcome 1	10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes and collect
	Specific Outcome	0.0	data
	Specific Outcome 1	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
	Specific Outcome	.0.4	Analyse measurement results of sales
	11. Title	E 5	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems
	11. 1146	W	and processes
	1 m		all a processor
	Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired
	opecino odicomo		service levels
	Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
	opcomo Guicos		
		* 10	
	12. Title		Conceptualise and research requirements
			K.
	Specific Outcome	12.1	Establish research requirements
		12.2	Determine research requirement systems
		**	
8	20 A		
	13. Title		Design a research brief
		W	*
		13.1	Assess and recommend a research brief
	Specific Outcome	13.2	Design a research brief to optimise results.
			ii .
	4 7		The state of the s
	14. Title	4	Develop campaign; media and creative strategies
	<u> </u>		The state of the s
		14.1	Develop marketing communications objectives and strategies.
		14.2	Implement marketing communications, objectives and strategies.
	Specific Outcome	14.3	Monitor and review marketing communications campaign.
		55	Manage the appoint form
	15. Title		Manage the account team.
	0 (6 - 0	46 4	Identify the role and function of the Account Manager
		15.1	Identify the role and function of the Account Manager.
	Specific Outcome	15.2	Identify the role and function of the Strategic Planner.

have a constant of the for

在外面的第三人称形式:

新的对抗的过去式和过去分词

empont, direct

emoduci siti auc

emessu() oftend)

· William A. J. Styller

tiffe smooth fillions

Late emconditions

7 (.1

 $\{\hat{r}_{i},\hat{r}_{i}\}$

edul to

16. Title	8	Manage the communications research process.		-1,	3.5	\$-
Specific Outcome	16.1	Assess the need for research.	7+3-			
Specific Outcome	16.2	Establish and set research objectives.	W. C.			
Specific Outcome	16.3	Evaluate research providers and services.	process to the same	4	- t-	
Specific Outcome	16.4	Select and brief providers and determine research	ch me	hod	•	
Specific Outcome	16.5	Evaluate and research proposals and select bes	t fit	aioai	1 N 4 a 1 11	11 153
Specific Outcome	16.6	Analyse, interpret, present and apply research file	ndings	and	resu	ults.
38 T	167.	to a first of the parents and high				
17. Title	- 15 T	Develop and implement the creative process.	-1-1	ja in in	e de la companya de l	t - 1 - 11 - 1 - 12
Specific Outcome	17.1	Develop the marketing communications concept	in Assa	1, 2	plana	a. ; (*)
Specific Outcome	17.2	Implement creative process	ed Post		1	

en al la calabata de la companión de la compan

producting the state of the state of the

reserve of the

of a second of the file.

to the control of the property of the property of the control of t

ENTITLE OF A STATE OF THE WARRENCE OF THE STATE OF THE ST

the little and the angle property of the state of

about the term of a principle of the constant of a agreement

Description of the second of the second of the second

test that it have been been the policy who we friends

and a proper to an above the state of the state

in the second registration of the left.

alia antikaria itu kitu kana a

THE OF CHARLES BUT OF BUT OF BUT OF STREET

Control of the state of the sta

No. 1218

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 7

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

7

Credit:

494

issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

er ing service day it exist the

The National Second Degree in Marketing Communications: Level 7 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Marketing Communications their chosen career path. The qualification in Marketing Communications offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National Second Degree in Marketing Communications will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

BENEFIC OF THE SECRETARY SEEDS FOR A PROPERTY DEFINACION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Creative Directors
- Account Executives
- Media Planners
- Marketing Managers

- Marketing Traffic Controllers
- Copywriters
- Marketing Communication Specialists

This qualification will help the learner at Level 7 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Marketing Communications.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Marketing Communications. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

This higher degree will allow learners to operate at a strategic and conceptual level in designing and strategising new technologies, methodologies and techniques of furthering the purposes and benefits of Marketing Communications.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Degree - Marketing Communications or equivalent NQF 6.

and a street of the second of the second

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Analyse and evaluate global trends and develop a vision for an organization.
- Develop a monitoring system and evaluate and monitor a strategic marketing plan.
- · Monitor and control all aspects of an internal or external marketing unit.
- Interpret a brief and develop a public relations and marketing campaign.
- · Develop, plan and review alternative marketing opportunities.
- Assess current marketing culture and set marketing culture and ethics objectives to instill a marketing culture and ethics in all stakeholder groups.
- Create and maintain a positive culture of customer service in the supply chain and conceptualise innovative customer service strategies.
- Develop, assess and write research policies and sponsor research activities for market research projects.

 Develop an integrated Marketing Communications strategy and global Marketing Communications strategy.

 Manage specialized areas in Marketing Communications and the Marketing Communications strategies.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The overall process for developing an organisation vision.
- The strategic marketing plans development and evaluation.
- The process for starting and structuring a marketing unit and the application of financial plans and controls.
- Public relations and marketing campaigns are defined and interpreted strategies developed to meet requirements.
- The involvement of all stakeholders to develop alternative opportunities.
- Marketing culture establishment in all stakeholder groups.
- Marketing best practice ethics are established, set and implemented within given resource constraints.
- Customer service culture is developed and innovative systems conceptualised to meet objectives.
- Research projects are identified, sponsored and monitored.
- Research policies are developed, agreed and recommended and assist organisation to meet its
 objectives.
- Integrated marketing communications strategy is developed and managed to achieve overall marketing objectives.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Marketing Communications industry, learners may also be able to carry out careers in

- Advertising
- Promotion
- Public Relations
- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Marketing
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Research
- Marketing Consultancy
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

- 1. The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector eg. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing; Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Marketing Communications field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

(de productive and consequences of a decided to

	Level 7	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a national strategy benchmarked to add value internationally	70	70
Kill of the Francisco of	Establish scenarios of best practice	70	70 60
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1 (1 4)	140
Core	Develop a vision for an organisation	20	20
	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan	20	20
	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)	60	60
i de de la companya	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign	20	20
	Generate alternative opportunities	10	10
	Instil Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups	8	8
126 A	Set Marketing Ethics Policy	8	8
	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain	20	20
48.	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies	30	30
	Sponsor research projects	10	10
	Set research policy	10	10
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Control of the Contro	A LOS	10.1
Elective			216
Elective	Develop an integrated marketing communications strategy	50	50
a	Manage specialised areas in marketing communications	40	40
	Develop and manage global marketing communications strategy.	50	50
			140

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONALSECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS **NQF LEVEL 7**

300 100 100

141

A STANK SELEVATION 一种人名英克利 美克斯克 化烷基

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

Core

	1.	Title	Develop a vision for an organisation		
	2.	Title	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan		
	3.	Title	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)	\$9	
	4.	Title	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign	26. 26.	1100
	5.	Title	Generate alternative opportunities	2	
•	6.	Title	Instil Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups	Ĭ,	
	7.	Title	Set Marketing Ethics Policy		
	8.	Title	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain		
	9.	Title	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and	strate	gies
	10.	Title	Sponsor research projects		
	11.	Title	Set research policy		1.0

Elective

12. 13. 14.	Title Title Title	Develop an integrated marketing communications strategy Manage specialised areas in marketing communications Develop and manage global marketing communications strategy.
	1 15-4-6	
		and the second of the second o

e Company Comp

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

1. Title	1- 3 1 2013	Develop a strategic plan.	Seat Assessment	
Specific Outcome	35 7 (134) 1 1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context	De de la cons	17. e (
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, mic	ro market	and
Specific Outcome	1.4	competitor environments		
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives		
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies		
Specific Outcome			5 2	77 V 8

molecular on the control of the control of the control of

square; took off the course of end by \$1 ft. "Salestander.

to real energy of proprint and the second section of

2. Title	1.	Monitor and review activity plan
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	2.1 2.2	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
		Evaluate results
Specific Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances
Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
Specific Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations
3. Title		Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
E 3 a	8	
Specific Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
Specific Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data
Specific Outcome	3.3	Compare actual to standard
Specific Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
opeonic outcome	J.7	Oive reedback to marketers and service providers
4 TM		
4. Title	100	Manage a communications projects
	22 2007 STAR	
Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and format
Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
Specific Outcome	4.3	Poviou the communications project implementation
opecine outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness
		and the second of the second o
5. Title		Present a range of products or services
Specific Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
Specific Outcome	5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment
Specific Outcome		
Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
or as to sever of the description	9 60	
	4 40 an	a sa ang a sa sagara sa ang a garagaga a sa
6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities
Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
	V. .	within an organisation
Specific Outcome	6.2	
opeonic Outcome	0.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
	4 4	The second of th
7. Title		Integrate brand mix elements
0		
Specific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix
Specific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
\$ B	70	
8. Title		Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
200 VARD 10000 10 II.		culture
Specific Outcome	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture
Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme
85%		

75 10	9.	Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
	Specifi	c Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing programme
	Specifi	c Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices
		c Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices
	Specifi	Coulcome	3.0	
	10.	Title		Measure and analyse customer service level
	Specifi	c Outcome	10.1	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
		ic Outcome	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of customer service
	Specifi	ic Outcome	10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes and collect data
	Specifi	ic Outcome	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
	11	Title		Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
	Specif	ic Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired service levels
	Specif	ic Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
	12.	Title		Develop an integrated marketing communications strategy
	Specif	ic Outcome	12.1	Establish integrated marketing communication objectives
1. 7 1.		ic Outcome	12.2	Develop an integrated marketing communication programme
1, 10		ic Outcome	12.3	Implement integrated marketing communication programme
. A. 1 V		ic Outcome	12.4	Monitor and review integrated marketing communication programme
4	t, "	- 721 9075	a arrist	terfley, quarked that a resident of the first of the firs
10. 2. 11.	13.	Title	rijari Silari	Manage specialised areas in marketing communications
· 4,	Specif	ic Outcome	13.1	Manage consumer marketing communications
		ic Outcome	13.2	Manage business-to-business marketing communications
		ic Outcome	13.3	Manage marketing communications for non-profit organisations
7 9	100	ic Outcome	13.4	Manage marketing communications for service industry
	14.	Title	100 Q	Develop and manage global marketing communications strategy
. 3. 5		700	5.7 1 5	r gift in April 1
		fic Outcome	14.1	Identify global issues pertaining to marketing communications
	Specif	fic Outcome	14.2	Select and co-ordinate global marketing communications strategies
		fic Outcome	14.3	Utilise multimedia technology for global marketing communications communication
27	Speci	fic Outcome	14.4	Co-ordinate multinational/global marketing communications agency

No. 1219

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

4

Credit:

134

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rational of the qualification

The National Qualification in Customer Management: Level 4 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who enter the field of Customer Management. The whole marketing field per se is a key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner. The Customer Management National Certificate at NQF Level 4 will provide a broad knowledge and skills needed in the industry and to progress along a career path for learners who

- Were previously disadvantaged or who were unable to complete their schooling and were therefore denied access to Further Education and Training.
- Have worked in Customer Management for many years, but have no formal qualification in Customer Management.
- Wish to extend their range of skills and knowledge of the industry so that they can become knowledge workers in Customer Management.

The National Certificate in Customer Management: Level 4 allows the learner to work towards a nationally recognised whole qualification. The qualification will allow both those in formal educations and those already employed in marketing organisations access, due to its flexibility. It aims to develop individuals who are informed and skilled in Customer Management.

The qualification has building blocks that can be developed further and will lead to a more defined Customer Management career path at NQF Level 5. It also focuses on the skills, knowledge, values and attitudes required to progress further. The intention is

- To promote the development of knowledge and skills that are required in all sub-sectors of marketing.
- To release the potential of people.
- To provide opportunities for people to move up the value chain.

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Sales Managers
- Sales Representatives
- National Account Managers
- Key Account Managers
- · Channel Managers

- Category Managers
- Telesales Clerks
- Sales Directors
- Client Services Clerks
- Field Marketers

The National Certificate in Customer Management: Level 4 should produce knowledgeable, skilled Customer Managers who are able to contribute to improved productivity and efficiency within the marketing industry. It should provide the means for current individuals in the Customer Management field to receive recognition of prior learning and to upgrade their skills and knowledge base. The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to give a broad understanding of marketing and the electives, which will allow for a specific competence in Customer Management. It will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Any individuals who are or wish to be involved in Customer Management will access this qualification. It also serves as the entry qualification into Marketing Research Qualifications in the higher band of learning. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 4. This qualification is also related to other qualifications such as the National Certificate in Marketing Communications, the National Certificate in Marketing Research and the National Certificate in Marketing Management where all four of these qualifications will share fundamental competence as well as core competence. Portability across all four of these National Certificates are therefore ensured.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a "complete and whole" qualification, any learner who can provide guidance of the learning assumed to be in place, has open access to this qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence in communicating verbally and in writing and computer technology at Level 3 on the NQF or equivalent.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Work with other members of a marketing team to meet performance standards and objectives.
- Identify, assess, utilize and account for marketing expertise and resources in order to meet marketing objectives and report on results.
- Identify prospective customers and their needs and present the correct features, advantages and benefits to enable customers to make informed buying decisions.
- Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning, product life cycles, market segmentation, marketing mix and the competitive environment for products and services.
- Demonstrate an understanding for and comply with legislation, rules, activities and transactions.
- Identify and evaluate brand product and service promotional opportunities and co-ordinate and evaluate promotional activities and results.
- Comply with organisational ethics by applying marketing principles, concepts and culture through the identification of all stakeholders and their relationships.
- Liase with a range of customers ad identifying and solving customers complaints and problems.
- Identify, monitor and review marketing information and gather and process data for research and information purposes.
- Take orders from customers to ensure customer needs are fulfilled and remain satisfied.
- Conduct follow-up procedures with customers to evaluate and maintain customer satisfaction levels and relationships.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The importance of working together and communicating with all stakeholders in order to meet marketing requirements and objectives.
- Giving identified customers the correct information (features, advantages and benefits) to enable them to make informed buying decisions.
- The legal and ethical requirements in the marketing field.
- Product positioning, target markets and the competitive environment.
- Promotions which deal with either brand, product or service.
- The importance of knowing the internal and external stakeholders and believing in marketing as a profession.
- The methods, techniques and principles of dealing with customers and clients to meet their needs.
- Being able to source expertise and resources to assist with information gathering and processing.
- The way customers verbal and written orders are taken and recorded and opportunities and options for dealing with these.
- Procedures and processes for conducting administration issues pertaining to customer orders.
- How to follow-up on customer orders and how to maintain customer satisfaction and relationships.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, and reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Customer Management research qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

Tyllin His o

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Customer Management industry, learners may also be able to enter careers in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Consulting
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR MENTS

HOTE BEST TON LOND OF BOMPLES

erabioterrali, a sankiere ek

of alit it reclaiments to

Tanka unidi. Si

de del pale vain escataci

Note:

- The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing; Point of Sale etc.

A learner could follow a career in the Customer Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 4	Cr	Total
undamental	Communicate verbally and in writing to a range of stakeholders	20	20
	Work with a range of software packages to generate, maintain and manipulate data	20	20
			40
Core	Work as a member of a marketing team	5	-5
, A s o ₂ ,	Meet marketing performance standards	4	4
	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives	4	4
	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products	6	6
	Identify customers of the business	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning	4	4 .
	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications	4	4
	Deal with brand, product and service promotions	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market	4	4
	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment	4	4
	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture	4	4
S COL - No CONTRACTOR OF	Comply with organisational ethics	4	4
	Identify internal and external stakeholders	4	4
	Liaise with a range of customers of a business	4	4
•	Handle a range of customer complaints	4	4
	Identify expertise and resources	3	3
	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data	4	4
			70
Elective	Take orders from customers to fulfill a need for goods and/or services	10	10
the state of the s	Conduct follow-up with customers to evaluate satisfaction levels	14	14
4		-	24

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

Core

1.	Title	Work as a member of a marketing team
2.	Title	Meet marketing performance standards
3.	Title	Identify and utilise marketing resources to meet objectives
4.	Title	Describe features, advantages and benefits of a range of products
5.	Title	Identify customers of the business
6.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of product positioning
7.	Title	Comply with legal requirements and understand implications
8.	Title	Deal with brand, product and service promotions
9.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the target market
10.	Title	Demonstrate an understanding of the competitive environment
11.	Title	Instill in myself a personal marketing culture
12.	Title	Comply with organisational ethics
13.	Title	Identify internal and external stakeholders
14.	Title	Liaise with a range of customers of a business
15.	Title	Handle a range of customer complaints
16.	Title	Identify expertise and resources
17.	Title	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data

Elective

18.	Title	Take orders from customers to fulfill a need for goods and/or services
19.	Title	Conduct follow-up with customers to evaluate satisfaction levels

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL CERTIFICATE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 4

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 4

1. Little		Work as a member of a marketing team	
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4	Communicate with all relevant stakeholders to enhance teamwork Report on team progress to appropriate authority and team Display tendencies to work with others as a member of a marketing team Handle and resolve areas of conflict	
2. Title		Meet marketing performance standards	
Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome Specific Outcome	2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4	Demonstrate an understanding of marketing performance standards Follow instructions to meet standards Meet marketing objectives Report on marketing objectives progress	

	17. Title	e RB	Monitor marketing information flow and collect and process marketing data
	Specific Outcome	17.1	Identify marketing information flow needs
	Specific Outcome	17.2	Monitor and review marketing information flow
	Specific Outcome	17.3	Gather data for researching and information purposes
	Specific Outcome	17.4	Process data for researching information purposes
		W	
	18. Title		Take orders from customers to fulfill a need for goods and/or services
	Specific Outcome	18.1	Accept and record customers order verbally
30	Specific Outcome	18.2	Accept and record customers written order
	Specific Outcome	18.3	Complete and administer order procedures and documentation
	Specific Outcome	18.4	Confirm and distribute orders
		3	s s s
	19. Title	g 9 8	Conduct follow-up with customers to evaluate satisfaction levels
371	Specific outcome	19.1	Follow-up on orders placed
	Specific Outcome	19.2	Maintain customer satisfaction and relationships
		00 @00 11 - 11 11 11	And the department of the control of

No. 1220

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

5

Credit:

243

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rational of the qualification

The National Diploma in Customer Management: Level 5 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who are already involved in the field of Customer Management or who enter the field at a higher level. Learners recognise that marketing is an essential and key business function necessary for the success of any organisation, both strategically and operationally. The qualification is inextricably linked to the Standard Generating Body's (SGB's), definition of Marketing, "to identify, anticipate and satisfy current and future consumer and customer expectations, needs and problems by facilitating and consummating exchange to achieve targeted levels of profitability and / or value in an accountable and socially responsible manner.

This qualification also reflects the needs of the marketing sector both now and in the future: it gives accessibility and flexibility to the learner and to the employer. The level of flexibility is reflected in the multiple job roles and careers, organisational requirements and changing technological nature of marketing and at the same time it allows the individual to work towards a nationally recognised qualification

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Šales Managers
- Sales Representatives
- National Account Managers
- Key Account Managers
- Channel Managers

- Category Managers
- Telesales Clerks
- Sales Directors
- Client Services Clerks
- Field Marketers

The National Diploma in Customer Management is structured in such a way that it exposes learners to a broad set of core competences while the electives allow for special competence in Customer Management. It certainly promotes the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification will have demonstrated competence at NQF Level 4 in the area of Customer Management or will have attained an equivalent qualification at that level. This qualification will be registered at NQF Level 5 on the National Qualification Framework and learners will have acquired a range of fundamental, core and elective competence around the areas of Marketing Strategy, Marketing Customer Relations, Principles of Marketing, Marketing Communications, Marketing Management, Marketing Research and Customer Management. Learners will have also demonstrated competence against specialised outcomes in the area of Customer Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Certificate in Marketing, Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 4.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Conduct a marketing situational analysis while leading a team of Marketers and Service Providers.
- Develop, implement and manage a marketing related project and / or activity plan, and implement a generic marketing communications strategy.
- Present the features, advantages and benefits of products to customers so that a deal can be closed.
- Provide product training to others in the organisation and coach others on the principles of marketing in an organisation.
- Identify brand mix elements and financial implecations for decision making.
- Integrate marketing plans with the business process.
- Monitor and control the handling of customers, customer needs and requirements and areas of customer service impact.
- Analyse and interpret marketing information and present marketing data to stakeholders.
- Establish and develop customer needs and relationships to improve sales and relationships.
- Develop, implement and monitor customer activity plans to meet organisational and customer requirements.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- Data gathering processes, it's analysis and the drawing of conclusions and making recommendations.
- How to get the best results from a team of marketers or service providers by monitoring and rectifying performance.
- Project plans and their successful conclusion.
- Communications models and strategies and the elements and processes.
- Customer needs and their identification to enable the production and demonstration of features, advantages and benefits.
- Training and coaching environment establishment and implementation.
- Product and service selling methods, techniques and principles.
- Brand influences and familiarity factors.
- · Financial statement analysis and evaluation.
- Marketing activities and the issues, roles and characteristics that affect them.
- Customer service providers and their interaction to establish satisfied customers by interpreting and meeting customer needs and all areas that impact on customer service levels.
- Marketing data, it's analysis; interpretation and presentation to all stakeholders.
- Customer needs and relationships, their establishment, maintenance and evaluation.
- Customer activity plans, their development and communication to all stakeholders.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- · NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

er formal and a series of the
A March Said of the complete the Street and the contract of

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Marketing Communications Qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Customer Management industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Consulting
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing

 In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc

Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc.

A learner could follow a career in the Customer Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to
 the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements
 reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and
 in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

action the contract of the contract of

THE PART OF THE PARTY OF THE PROPERTY PROPERTY.

and word to face."

21,71,7420, 177, 187, 187

problem in the complete

to the State of the the American American section of

Reday Bolk of the after of a

The state of the first of the state of the s

	Level 5	Cr	Total
undamental	Use a range of electronic media to sell an idea to a range of stakeholders	40	40
	Present data based on sound information technology	40	40
	practices	40	80
		5	5
Core	Conduct a marketing situational analysis	5	
ŭi	Lead a team of marketers and service providers	10	10
	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan	5	5
¥.,	Implement a generic communication strategy	10	10
	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer	10	10
	Provide product training to others in the organisation	10	10
	Close a deal with a customer	5	5
	Identify brand mix elements	8	8
	Identify financial implications for making decisions	8	8
	Integrate marketing plans with business process	6	6
	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation	5	5
	Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service	6	6
Zn:	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans	8	8
F120Y120	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact	6	6
	Present data to stakeholders	5	5
	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information	8	8
			115
Elective	Establish customer needs and relationships	16	16
8	Develop customer needs and relationships	16	16
en en	Develop and implement customer activity plans to reach agreement	16	16
		-	48

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

Core

1.	Title	Conduct a marketing situational analysis
2.	Title	Lead a team of marketers and service providers
3.	Title	Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
4.	Title	Implement a generic communication strategy
5.	Title	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
6.	Title	provide product training to others in the organisation
7.	Title	Close a deal with a customer
8.	Title	Identify brand mix elements
9.	Title	Identify financial implications for making decisions
10.	Title	Integrate marketing plans with business process
11.	Title	Coach others on principles of modulation in
12.	Title	Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
13.		Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
13.	Title	Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
14.	Title	Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
15.	Title	Present data to stakeholders
16.	Title	Analyse and interpret data and marketing information

Elective

17.	Title	Establish customer needs and relationships
18.	Title	Develop customer needs and relationships
19.	Title	Develop and implement customer activity plans to reach agreement

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 5

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 5

1. Title	2	Conduct a marketing situational analysis		
Specific Outcome	1.1	Gather data relating to project from the environment		
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse data for the marketing situational analysis		
Specific Outcome 1.3		Draw conclusion and make recommendations		
\$5	# #			
2. Title	77 50	Lead a team of marketers and service providers		
Specific Outcome	2.1	Set objectives for marketing team		
Specific Outcome	2.2	Coach marketing staff to be able to achieve objectives		
Specific Outcome	2.3	Monitor performance of marketing staff against targets		
Specific Outcome	2.4	Provide feedback on performance		
Specific Outcome	2.5	Take corrective action as needed		
6 6		E		

	3. Title		Develop, implement and manage a project / activity plan
	Specific Outcome	3.1	Evaluate proposals and select preferred option
	Specific Outcome	3.2	Conceptualise plan
		3.3	Delegate tasks
	Specific Outcome		
	Specific Outcome	3.4	Track project
		19	
	4. Title	8	Implement a generic communication strategy
	O	4.4	Identify and explain a generic communications model
	Specific Outcome	4.1	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
	Specific Outcome	4.2	Analyse, interpret and implement a generic communication strategy
			the state of the s
	5. Title	80	Identify product features, advantages and benefits to the customer
	Cassifia Outsome	5.1	Identify needs of the customer
	Specific Outcome		Present features, advantages and benefits to the customer
	Specific Outcome	5.2	Present realists, advantages and benefits
	Specific Outcome	5.3	Demonstrate features, advantages and benefits
	N 10 W		The second secon
	6. Title		Provide product training to others in the organisation
	The second		
	Specific Outcome	6.1	Establish an environment conducive to learning and development
	opecino outorno		needs
	On a siffe Outcome	6.2	Implement the product training activities
	Specific Outcome	0.2	Implement are product during district
	2 7 7		
Û		£ 5	Oleman adeal with a gustomor
	7. Title	201	Close a deal with a customer
Ŷ.	Specific Outcome	7.1	Apply personal selling skills to sell products or services
	Specific Outcome	7.2	Apply closing techniques to sell products or services
	+		
	8. Title		Identify brand mix elements
	. O. 1100		
	Casaifia Outcomo	8.1	Describe factors influencing branding
	Specific Outcome		Explain brand familiarity
	Specific Outcome	8.2	Explain brand familiarity
	16 N		the state of the s
	9. Title	63	Identify financial implications for making decisions
	H W		
	Specific Outcome	9.1	Evaluate financial statements against reporting requirements.
	Specific Outcome		Apply financial analysis tools to interpret and report on financial
	Spooms Gardonia	With health	implications
	*		TAMPATA STATE OF THE PARTY OF T
	N		

10. Title		Integrate marketing plans with business process
Specific Outcome	10.1	Monitor the marketing environment and determine variables for marketing activities
Specific Outcome	10.2	Distinguish the role of marketing research and marketing information
		systems in investigating and understanding the operations of the market place
Specific Outcome	10.3	Distinguish characteristics of major markets
Specific Outcome	10.4	Identify influences on consumer behaviour in relation to marketing activities
11. Title		Coach others on principles of marketing in an organisation
Specific Outcome	11.1	Describe marketing principles and ethics to others
Specific Outcome	11.2	Develop and implement a coaching / monitoring plan
Specific Outcome	11.3	Develop and implement a monitoring programme
Specific Outcome	11.4	Monitor events of a "marketing culture" in the organisation
12. Title		Monitor handling of customers by frontline customer service
Specific Outcome	12.1	Monitor interaction between customer service providers and the customer
Specific Outcome	34.2	Monitor the customer's satisfaction
Specific Outcome	34.3	Monitor key performance areas
3		
13. Title		Manage customer requirements and needs and implement action plans
Specific Outcome	13.1	Listen to and interpret customer needs
Specific Outcome	13.2	Describe action plan
Specific Outcome	13.3	Implement action plan to meet customer's needs
Specific Outcome	13.4	Track and measure the action plan to its completion
14. Title		Identify and manage areas of customer service impact
Specific Outcome	14.1	Identify "touch points" of customers
Specific Outcome	14.2	Determine solutions in areas of customer service
Specific Outcome	14.3	Action change or improve areas of customer service
15. Title		Present data to stakeholders
Specific Outcome	15.1	Develop the presentation of data to stakeholders
Specific Outcome	15.2	Present data to stakeholders
100		

tation bear collections and a land and see all the se

then proper action

110+0	16. Title		Analyse and interpret data and marketing information
	Specific Outcome	16.1	Analyse data and marketing information
	Specific Outcome	16.2	Interpret data and marketing information
	4	(4)	
	17. Title	39	Establish customer needs and relationships
	Specific Outcome	17.1	Distinguish customer purchasing motives and behaviours.
	Specific Outcome	17.2	Assess and respond to customer needs.
		200	308 a c
	18. Title		Develop customer needs and relationships.
	Specific Outcome	18.1	Initiate interpersonal communication with sales customers.
	Specific Outcome	18.2	Assess and respond to customer needs.
	Specific Outcome	18.3	Maintain and improve customer relationship.
	4 8		
e:	19. Title	8	Develop and implement customer activity plans to reach agreement.
	Specific Outcome	19.1	Develop customer activity plan.
	Specific Outcome	19.2	Communicate agreed customer activity plan to relevant stakeholders
	Specific Outcome	19.3	Implement and monitor customer activity plan.
	Specific Outcome	19.4	Review and evaluate customer activity plans performance.
	Specific Outcome	19.5	Develop and maintain customer specific business plans.
(9	Specific Outcome	19.6	Develop time and territory management plan to service customer requirements.
	Specific Outcome	19.7	Develop budget for implementation of customer plans.
17	enting a substitution	5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	
100		3 70	# # 1

No. 1221

21 November 2001

KARLINI SHTANIS

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Mark the formation and the straight of

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

6

Credit:

360

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rational of the qualification

The National First Degree in Customer Management: Level 6 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Customer Management their chosen career path. The qualification in Customer Management offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National First Degree in Customer Management will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Sales Managers
- Sales Representatives
- National Account Managers
- Key Account Managers
- Channel Managers

- Category Managers
- Telesales Clerks
- Sales Directors
- Client Services Clerks

Barrier Straight of

Field Marketers

This qualification will help the learner at Level 6 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Customer Management.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Customer Management. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

Learners acquiring this qualification would be operating in an advanced environment of Customer Management and will be more involved in the development, enhancement and growth of Customer Management Technologies and practice. Learners will be learning around areas of Strategy, Customer Relations and Marketing Principles. Learners will also be involved with core issues of Marketing Management, Marketing Communications and Marketing Research but will be furthering their specialisation of Customer Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the Diploma Marketing Communication or Marketing Research or Marketing Management or Customer Management or equivalent at NQF Level 5.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Articulate a vision and develop a strategic plan to meet the vision.
- Monitor and review activity plans and the performance levels of marketers and service providers.
- Manage all aspects of a communications project and review its effectiveness.
- Assess the sales environment in order to present a range of products and services to meet objectives.
- Identify and manage innovation opportunities and processes.
- Determine, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions and elements.
- Integrate and promote marketing principles, including ethics policies throughout the organization.

- · Formulate, design, implement, service delivery systems and processes.
- Measure and analyse customer service delivery systems and processes.
- Identify, design, implements, measure and analyse customer service levels.
- Establish and determine research requirements and design and recommend a research brief.
- Analyse, develop and manage customer strategies and activities to meet business objectives.
- Establish, negotiate, communicate and monitor business initiatives within agreed parameters.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The articulation of vision into strategic marketing objectives and strategies then monitoring activity plans to meet objectives.
- Performance criteria in terms of setting, collecting, comparing and providing feedback on performance.
- Marketing Communications projects, their identification, evaluation, selection, management and review.
- · A range of products and services and their presentation in line with objectives and time frames.
- Innovation as an important part of marketing and its successful implementation in an organisation.
- · Brand mix and the role viables and brand mix decision have on outcomes.
- Marketing principles and ethics and the importance of promoting and integrating these into marketing policy.
- Customer service levels, measurement and analysis and the design and implementation of customer service delivery systems.
- Research requirement, their establishment and systems and the design of a research brief.
- Customer strategies and activities, their analysis, development, implementation, monitoring and control.
- Business initiatives are established, negotiated and communicated to all relevant parties and within agreed parameters.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Customer Management qualification.

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- · Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor.

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Customer Management industry, learners may also be able to follow a career in

- General Marketing
- Customer Services
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Consulting
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

- The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing
- In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; Insurance etc.
- Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing;
 Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Customer Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- · A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 6	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a strategy using creative means to a range of stakeholders	60	60
K	Interpret historical data and present a range of formula to influence decision making	60	60 60
		-	120
Core	Develop a strategic plan	15	15
	Monitor and review activity plan	7	7
A 20	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers	10	10
(f) Ed	Manage a communications projects	15	15
380	Present a range of products or services	15	15
	Identify innovation opportunities	15	15
	Integrate brand mix elements	15	15
ia W	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations	8	8
	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	6	6
14	Measure and analyse customer service level	12	12
	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes	8	8
	Conceptualise and research requirements	10	10
	Design a research brief	10	10
0 de 1800 9 de 1800 1800 1800 1800 1800 1800 1800 180			146
Elective	Develop and manage customer strategies to meet business objectives	42	42
	Establish, negotiate and communicate business initiatives within agreed parameters	52	52
e de la companya del companya de la companya de la companya del companya de la co	 	1	94

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

Core

1.	Title	Develop a strategic plan
2.	Title	Monitor and review activity plan
3.	Title	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
4.	Title	Manage a communications projects
5.	Title	Present a range of products or services
6.	Title	Identify innovation opportunities
7.	Title	Integrate brand mix elements
8.	Title	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
9.	Title	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
10.	Title	Measure and analyse customer service level
11.	Title	Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems and processes
12.	Title	Conceptualise and research requirements
13.	Title	Design a research brief

Elective

14.	Title	Develop and manage customer strategies to meet business objectives
15.	Title	Establish, negotiate and communicate business initiatives within agreed
		parameters

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL FIRST DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 6

eras was a service of an exist,

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 6

1. Title		Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro, micro, market and competitor environments
Specific Outcome	1.3	Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
Specific Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

2. Title		Monitor and review activity plan
Specific Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
Specific Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results
Specific Outcome	2.3	D. J. San La Countries of Confession
	2000 DO 2000	Develop options to counteract variances
Specific Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
Specific Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations
5i	21.0	고 보이는 한 등으로 그 보면 있는 사람들이 함께 있는 것이 없는 것
3. Title	$P_{i,j} : \mathcal{C}_{i,j} \subseteq \mathcal{C}_{i,j}$	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
Specific Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
Specific Outcome	3.2	Collect relevant data
Specific Outcome	1000 100 000	Compare actual to standard
Specific Outcome	3.3	
Specific Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
A	X	80 ° ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' '
4. Title	2 - 1 mg	Manage a communications projects
Specific Outcome	4.1	Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and
···		format
Specific Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
Specific Outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness
		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
5. Title	a ê	Present a range of products or services
Specific Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
Specific Outcome	5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment
Specific Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
Opcomo odasomo		4
6. Title		Identify innovation opportunities
o. Hao	a e Mai	
Specific Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
70 		within an organisation
Specific Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
.7274×242		
7. Title		Integrate brand mix elements
Specific Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix
Specific Outcome	7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
Openine Gutterine	- 17.	
ia 8		
8. Title	E	Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
Specific Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
		culture
Specific Outcome	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture
Specific Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programme
openio outonio	-	

10			17 04 10 10
9. Title	8	Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy	4 5 # 11 14
Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing	10
19 Ng		programme	6
Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices	the state of
Specific Outcome			
Specific Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices	
		and the second of the second o	 ti, p jenë
10. Title		Measure and analyse customer service level	
Specific Outcome	10.1	Ideatt that I a	F. 8 8
		Identify factors which influence customer service and pe	rceptions
Specific Outcome	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perception	ns of
	3	customer service	
Specific Outcome	10.3		J
opecine Outcome	10.3	Implement customer service measurement processes a	nd collect
		data	
Specific Outcome	10.4	Analyse measurement results of customer service levels	a to the same
	10.1	Allaryse measurement results of custoffiel service levels	
11. Title	52		4
11. Title		Formulate, design and implement customer service deliv	ery systems
		and processes	B (B)
Specific Outcome	44.4	Developing at the second second	**************************************
Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve	desired
		service levels	
Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and affectiveness of action plane imple	
opeditie Outdome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans imple	mented
		and the second s	* *
12. Title		Conceptualise and research requirements	
		Conceptualise and research requirements	
(2)			44 4
Specific Outcome	12.1	Lalabian research reconcements	State of the state
Specific Outcome	12.2	Determine research requirement systems	: 1. 5 18 To 1 1 1 5"
opcome cateome	12.2		6 K
			Andrew Series
		the state of the s	
13. Title		Design a research brief	
io. Tide		Design a research blief	452 S
		5 10 4	19.44 Fig.
Specific Outcome	13.1	Assess and recommend a research brief	
Specific Outcome	13.2		
Specific Outcome	13.2	Design a research brief to optimise results.	
	. 40		
14 Title		Participation of the second	1000
14. Title		Develop and manage customer strategies to meet busine	ess .
		objectives	
M e			70 °E
Specific Outcome	444	Applicated account of the second of the seco	20
Specific Outcome	14.1	Analyse and assess customer strategies and activities	-
Specific Outcome	14.2	Develop customer strategy to meet business objectives	55
Specific Outcome	14.3	Implement approved customer strategy plans	1 1
		Manifestal approved customer strategy plans	
Specific Outcome	14.4	Monitor and control customer strategy performance	
		ns - memor in recommendation in the filter of the second filter of the f	
		e) (a	

15.	Title		Establish, negotiate and communicate business initiatives within agreed parameters
Spec	ific Outcome	15.1	Develop a proposal / presentation to meet customer's needs and expectations
Spec	ific Outcome	15.2	Proposal is presented to customers in order to enhance acceptance
	ific Outcome	15.3	Secure agreement for the proposal
500 St. 100 St	ific Outcome	15.4	Monitor, review and evaluate presentation acceptance

No. 1222

21 November 2001

SOUTH AFRICAN QUALIFICATIONS AUTHORITY



NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

Field:

Business, Commerce and Management Studies

Sub-field:

Marketing

Level:

7

Credit:

514

Issue date:

31 August 2001

Review date:

01 September 2003

Rationale of the qualification

The National Second Degree in Customer Management: Level 7 is designed to meet the needs of those learners who want to progress in the field of Marketing and will assist those who make Customer Management their chosen career path. The qualification in Customer Management offers scope for a large variety of talents, displayed by individuals of diverse backgrounds, cultures, and of either gender.

The qualification in marketing can be followed in virtually every sector, i.e. business-to-business marketing, i.e. products or services sold to other businesses; services marketing, i.e. education, real estate, travel and tourism, legal services, etc; fast moving consumer goods, i.e. products people need and use every day; financial services, i.e. banking and insurance.

At the higher levels the Marketing profession needs a set of unit standards against which to align and measure it self.

The National Second Degree in Customer Management will provide and offer the skills, knowledge and understanding of marketing that are essential for analysis of market conditions, development of marketing strategies, product and brand development, pricing, distribution (local and international), integrated marketing communication (including advertising, promotions and public relations) and interaction with the customer (through selling and customer service).

Many different roles and careers are linked to and affected by this qualification. They include, but are not limited to:

- Sales Managers
- Sales Representatives
- National Account Managers
- Key Account Managers
- Channel Managers

- Category Managers
- Telesales Clerks
- Sales Directors
- Client Services Clerks
- Field Marketers

This qualification will help the learner at Level 7 to get the requirements of such a qualification, namely, the general knowledge and understanding of business functions as well as a detailed practical understanding of Customer Management.

The qualification is structured in such a way that exposes individuals to a set of core competences to enable them to function in this role. The electives will provide for more special competence in the area of Customer Management. The qualification will also promote the notion of life-long learning.

Purpose of the qualification

This higher degree will allow learners to operate at a strategic and conceptual level in designing and strategising new technologies, methodologies and techniques of furthering the purposes and benefits of Customer Management.

Access to the Qualification

As this is a unit standard based qualification, any learner who is competent in the unit standard as required by the core, fundamental and elective components stipulated in the qualification, will have free access to the qualification.

Learning assumed to be in place

Learners accessing this qualification will have demonstrated competence against the standards in the National Degree – Customer Management or equivalent NQF 6.

Exit level Outcomes

On achieving this qualification, the learner will be able to:

- Analyse and evaluate global trends and develop a vision for an organization.
- Develop a monitoring system and evaluate and monitor a strategic marketing plan.
- Monitor and control all aspects of an internal or external marketing unit.
- Interpret a brief and develop a public relations and marketing campaign.
- Develop, plan and review alternative marketing opportunities.
- Assess current marketing culture and set marketing culture and ethics objectives to instill a marketing culture and ethics in all stakeholder groups.
- Create and maintain a positive culture of customer service in the supply chain and conceptualise innovative customer service strategies.
- Develop, assess and write research policies and sponsor research activities for market research projects.

- Design and develop customer acquisition and retention strategies and manage specialized areas in Customer Management processes to meet corporate business objectives.
- Set sales procedures and policies for the organization and develop and monitor annual sales plans and objectives.

Associated Assessment Criteria

In particular assessors should check that the learner must demonstrate an ability to consider a range of options and make decisions about:

- The overall process for developing an organisation vision.
- The strategic marketing plans development and evaluation.
- The process for starting and structuring a marketing unit and the application of financial plans and controls.
- Public relations and marketing campaigns are defined and interpreted strategies developed to meet requirements.
- The involvement of all stakeholders to develop alternative opportunities.
- Marketing culture establishment in all stakeholder groups.
- Marketing best practice ethics are established, set and implemented within given resource constraints.
- Customer service culture is developed and innovative systems conceptualised to meet objectives.
- Research projects are identified, sponsored and monitored.
- Research policies are developed, agreed and recommended and assist organisation to meet its
 objectives.
- Customer service and relations strategies are designed, developed and managed to build customers base.
- Sales procedures and policies are set and sales plans are developed and monitored to meet targets.

International comparability

Benchmarking was done by comparison to Unit Standards / Outcomes of learning against

- New Zealand Qualifications
- Australian Qualification
- · NVQ Qualifications from Britain and
- IMM Qualifications

erg strain to

the tax of the same

Integrated Assessment

Because assessment practices must be open, transparent, fair, valid, reliable and ensure that no learner is disadvantaged in any way whatsoever, an integrated assessment approach is incorporated into the qualification.

As it is a Unit Standard based Qualification, both formative and summative assessment processes are accounted for.

Recognition of prior learning

The structure of this Unit Standard based Qualification makes the recognition of Prior Learning possible, if the learner is able to demonstrate competence in the knowledge, skills, values and attitudes implicit in this Customer Management qualification. AVAIL SE STORY AND A SECOND

(b) . ' - . '#'

: 1

The terms of the state of the s

a ja og skrigt i dan björið 1980-blei

This recognition of Prior Learning may allow:

- For accelerated access to further learning
- Gaining of credits towards a unit standard

the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the state of the s All recognition of Prior Learning is subject to quality assurance by services SETA or a relevant accredited ETQA and is conducted by an accredited workplace assessor. man and the second of the second

Articulation possibilities

On completion of this qualification, besides careers in the formal Customer Management industry, learners may also be able to carry out careers in

- General Marketing
- **Customer Services**
- Direct Selling
- Sales
- Marketing Consulting
- Merchandising
- Marketing Management

Note:

The above is an indication rather than an exhaustive listing 1.

In addition learners can specialise in an industry sector e.g. EMCG; Retail, Wholesale, Motor; 2.

Learners can also become even more specialised such as Call Center; Internet Marketing; 3. Point of Sale etc

A learner could follow a career in the Customer Management field focusing on FMCG and undertaking it in Call Centers.

Moderation Options

- Anyone assessing a learner or moderating the assessment of a learner against this Qualification must be registered as an assessor with the Service SETA ETQA.
- Any institution offering learning that will enable the achievement of this Qualification must be accredited as a provider with the Services SETA ETQA.
- Assessment and moderation of assessment will be overseen by the relevant ETQA according to the ETQAs policies and guidelines for assessment and moderation; in terms of agreements reached around assessment and moderation between ETQAs (including professional bodies); and in terms of the moderation guideline detailed immediately below.
- Moderation must include both internal and external moderation of assessments at exit points of the
 qualification, unless ETQA policies specify otherwise. Moderation should also encompass
 achievement of the competence described both in individual unit standards as well as the
 integrated competence described in the qualification.

Anyone wishing to be assessed against this Qualification may apply to be assessed by any assessment agency, assessor or provider institution that is accredited by the Services SETA ETQA.

Criteria for registration of assessors

For an applicant to register as an assessor, the applicant needs:

- A minimum of 2 (two) years' practical, relevant occupational experience
- Declared competent in all the outcomes of the National Assessor Unit Standards as stipulated by SAQA
- Detailed documentary proof of educational qualification, practical training undergone, and experience gained by the applicant must be provided (Portfolio of evidence)

	Level 7	Cr	Total
Fundamental	Present a national strategy benchmarked to add value internationally	70	70
	Establish scenarios of best practice	70	70 60
			140
Core	Develop a vision for an organisation	20	20
	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan	20	20
	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)	60	60
	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign	20	20
:	Generate alternative opportunities	10	10
	Instill Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups	8	8
	Set Marketing Ethics Policy	8	8
	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain	20	20
	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies	30	30
	Sponsor research projects	10	10
	Set research policy	10	10
	 		216
Elective	Design and develop customer acquisition and retention strategies to meet corporate business strategies.	40	40
g di ^c	Manage specialised areas in customer management processes.	40	40
	Set sales procedures and policies to meet business strategic plan	40	40
	Develop and monitor an annual sales plan	40	40
		+	160
		- Lander	100

UNIT STANDARDS IN NATIONALSECOND DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

Core

Title	Develop a vision for an organisation
Title	Monitor and evaluate a strategic marketing plan
Title	Manage a Marketing Unit (Internal or External)
Title	Develop a public relations and marketing campaign
Title	Generate alternative opportunities
Title	Instill Marketing culture in all stakeholder groups
Title	Set Marketing Ethics Policy
Title	Create a culture of customer service in the supply chain
Title	Conceptualise innovative customer service systems and strategies
Title	Sponsor research projects
Title	Set research policy
	Title

Elective

12.	Title	Design and develop customer acquisition and retention strategies to meet corporate
40		a anioco ottatogico.
13.	Title	Manage specialised areas in customer management processes.
14	Title	Set sales procedures and policion to management processes.
15.	Title	Set sales procedures and policies to meet business strategic plan Develop and monitor an annual sales plan

UNIT STANDARDS AND SPECIFIC OUTCOMES IN NATIONAL SECOND DEGREE IN CUSTOMER MANAGEMENT NQF LEVEL 7

UNIT STANDARDS ON NQF LEVEL 7

i. little	5	Develop a strategic plan.
Specific Outcome	1.1	Articulate the vision in a marketing context
Specific Outcome	1.2	Analyse possible long term trends with macro micro market and
Specific Outcome	1.3	competitor environments
Specific Outcome		Develop strategic marketing objectives
Specific Outcome	1.4	Develop alternative long-term strategies
opeonic Outcome	1.5	Evaluate and recommend "best " strategy

	-		
2. T	itle		Monitor and review activity plan
Specific	Outcome	2.1	Check activities to be performed in activity plans
Checific	Outcome	2.2	Evaluate results
Specific	Outcome	2.3	Develop options to counteract variances
Specific	Outcome		Evaluation of options
Specific	Outcome	2.4	Evaluation of options
Specific	Outcome	2.5	Made recommendations
02		972	
з. Т	itle	<u></u>	Monitor performance of marketers and service providers
J			
Considio	Outcome	3.1	Set performance criteria
		3.2	Collect relevant data
Specific	Outcome		Compare actual to standard
	Outcome	3.3	Compare actual to standard
Specific	Outcome	3.4	Give feedback to marketers and service providers
		96 95	
12 12			Manage a communications projects
4.	Title .		Manage a communication project
			Identify, evaluate and select the communications methods and
Specific	Outcome	4.1	
\$2.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00 \$1.00			format
Specific	Outcome	4.2	Manage the communications project implementation
Crecific	Outcome	4.3	Review the communications project effectiveness
Specific	Outcome	4.0	
	N		Present a range of products or services
5.	Title		Present a range of products of solution
7 22 25 7			Establish objectives for presenting a range of products or services
Specific	Outcome	5.1	Establish objectives for presenting a range of products
Specific	Outcome	5.2	Assess the internal and external sales environment
Specific	Outcome	5.3	Present a range of products or services
Specific	Catoonie		
	6:		
18 20 4 01		387	Identify innovation opportunities
6.	Title		
			Identify and examine processes and methods to facilitate innovation
Specifi	c Outcome	6.1	Identify and examine processes and means as
	2 200 0		within an organisation
Specifi	c Outcome	6.2	Lead and manage innovation processes within an organisation
1970 i			
	23		land the control of t
7.	Title		Integrate brand mix elements
		3×	
Specif	ic Outcome	7.1	Determine variables of the brand mix
		7.2	Confirm, co-ordinate and monitor brand mix decisions
Specif	ic Outcome	1.2	Comming of Commission
	E		
	to a	8 0	- * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
8.	Title		Promote principles of Marketing throughout organisations
	15 8		
Specif	ic Outcome	8.1	Design and develop appropriate programme to achieve desired
- 1 11	E. and		culture
0"	in Outcome	8.2	Implement programme to achieve desired culture
Specii	ic Outcome		Evaluate programme
Specif	ic Outcome	8.3	Evaluate programmo
		10	

9. Title		Integrate ethics policy into marketing policy
Specific Outcome	9.1	Ensure that ethics are integrated into the marketing
Specific Outroms	~ ~	programme
Specific Outcome	9.2	Evaluate marketing ethics practices
Specific Outcome	9.3	Correct unethical marketing practices
\$ 9		
10. Title		Measure and analyse customer service level
Specific Outcome	10.1	Identify factors which influence
Specific Outcome	10.2	Identify factors which influence customer service and perceptions
	10.2	Design methodologies to measure factors and perceptions of customer service
Specific Outcome	10.3	
		Implement customer service measurement processes and collect data
Specific Outcome	10.4	
		Analyse measurement results of customer service levels
11. Title		Formulate, design and implement customer service delivery systems
HI IN IN INC. SANCE	52 0.00	and processes
	^>1 •1	
Specific Outcome	11.1	Developing and implementing an action plan to achieve desired service levels
Specific Outcome	11.2	Monitor progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
		morning, progress and effectiveness of action plans implemented
12. Title	* -	Design and develop customer acquisition and retention strategies to
	Supple.	meet corporate business strategies
0	2212	
Specific Outcome	12.1	Analyse and assess customer profiles and base
Specific Outcome	12.2	Analyse and assess customer strategies and activities
Specific Outcome	12.3	Design, formulate and develop acquisition strategies
Specific Outcome	12.4	Produce and set sales and service targets and budgets
Specific Outcome	12.5	Do-ordinate and manage resources
was some stable for	1 1 1 2 2 2	
13. Title		Manage enocialized assessment
	1.777	Manage specialised areas in customer management process
Specific Outcome	13.1	
Specific Outcome	13.2	Manage consumers customer management
Specific Outcome	13.3	Manage business-to-business customer management
Specific Outcome	13.4	Manage customer management for non-profit organisations
i a disollo	10.4	Manage customer management for service industry
	16.7	
14. Title		Set sales procedures and policies to meet business strategic plan
Specific Outcome		M 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27 27
Specific Outcome	14.1	Design and develop sales procedures and policies
Specific Outcome	14.2	implement sales policies and procedures
Specific Outcome	14.3	Monitor and review sales policies and procedures
\$70.00		No decree of the control of the cont
G CANCEL C	1	Tarini member of the report of the contract of

Develop and monitor an annual sales plan 15. Title

Write sales plan 15.1 15.2 Specific Outcome Set sales budget Specific Outcome

Approve divisional plan Specific Outcome 15.3

Monitor and evaluate sales plan Specific Outcome 15.4

Dog ate your Gazette? ... read it online



www. SA GdZettes.co.za

A new information Portal keeping you up to date with news, legislation, the Parliamentary programme and which is the largest pool of SA Gazette information available on the Web.

- Easily accessible through the www!
 - Government Gazettes from January 1994
 - Compilations of all Indexes pertaining to the past week's Government Gazettes
 - All Provincial Gazettes from September 1995
 - Parliamentary Bilis as of January 1999
- Available in full-text, with keyword searching
- Sabinet Online scans, formats, edits and organize information for you. Diagrams and forms included as images.
- No stacks of printed gazettes all on computer. Think of the storage space you save.
- Offer Bill Tracker complementing the SA Gazettes products.

For easy electronic access to full-text gazette info, subscribe to the SA Gazettes from Sabinet Online. Please visit us at www.sagazettes.co.za



231

Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Publications: Tel: (012) 334-4508, 334-4509, 334-4510
Advertisements: Tel: (012) 334-4673, 334-4674, 334-4504
Subscriptions: Tel: (012) 334-4735, 334-4736, 334-4737
Cape Town Branch: Tel: (021) 465-7531

Gedruk deur en verkrygbaar by die Staatsdrukker, Bosmanstraat, Privaatsak X85, Pretoria, 0001 Publikasies: Tel: (012) 334-4508, 334-4509, 334-4510 Advertensies: Tel: (012) 334-4673, 334-4674, 334-4504 Subskripsies: Tel: (012) 334-4735, 334-4736, 334-4737 Kaapstad-tak: Tel: (021) 465-7531